EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

المنهج المعدل 2027

CONNECT Plus

By a group of supervisors

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات

الصف السادس الابتدائى

الفصل الدراسى الأول



تطبيق المعاصر التفاعلى

FIRST TERM

6th Primary 2027

Scanned with CamScanner

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

CONNECT Plus

By a group of supervisors

الصف السادس الابتدائى الفصل الدراسى الأول



GPS

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
15014
www.gpseducation.com

6th Primary
FIRST TERM

All rights reserved

Scanned with CamScanner

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

﴿ إِنَّ ٱلَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا۟ وَعَمِلُوا۟ ٱلصَّٰلِحَٰتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا ﴾ صدق الله العظيم

Egyptian National Library
Cataloging During Publishing
Prepared by Technical Affairs Department

El-Moasser Guide based on Connect Plus for Primary Schools
By a group of supervisors.
Cairo: GPS for Printing, Publishing and Distribution, 2026 - 2027
2 vols. ; 30 cm.
For 6th primary- First Term
I.S.B.N. : 978 - 977 - 970 - 350 - 3
1. English language - study and teaching (primary).
2. Education, primary 372.6521

رقم الإيداع : ١٣٤٠٣ / ٢٠٢٦

Name : .....

School : .....

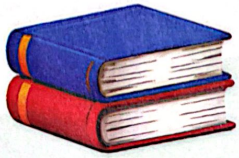
Grade : .....

Class : .....

Teacher's name : .....











Scanned with CamScanner



التطبيق التفاعلى من سلسلة كتب ...

الامتحان المعاصر

QR Code

1. نزل التطبيق. 2. أنشئ حسابك. 3. أدخل الكود الموجود على ظهر الغلاف.

استمتع بجميع مزايا التطبيق

لجميع المواد الدراسية

شرح | فيديوهات | ألعاب تعليمية | امتحانات تفاعلية | تدريبات

تواصل مع معلمك | تقارير متابعة | إشعارات | أخبار

تم تصنيف أسئلة الكتاب فى كل درس طبقًا لمستويات هرم بلوم والإشارة لها كالتالى :

● فهم ● تطبيق ● تحليل ● تقويم ● ابتكار

المستويات العليا من التفكير

المستويات الدنيا من التفكير

إنتاج أفكار جديدة
صمم - اقترح - نمذج

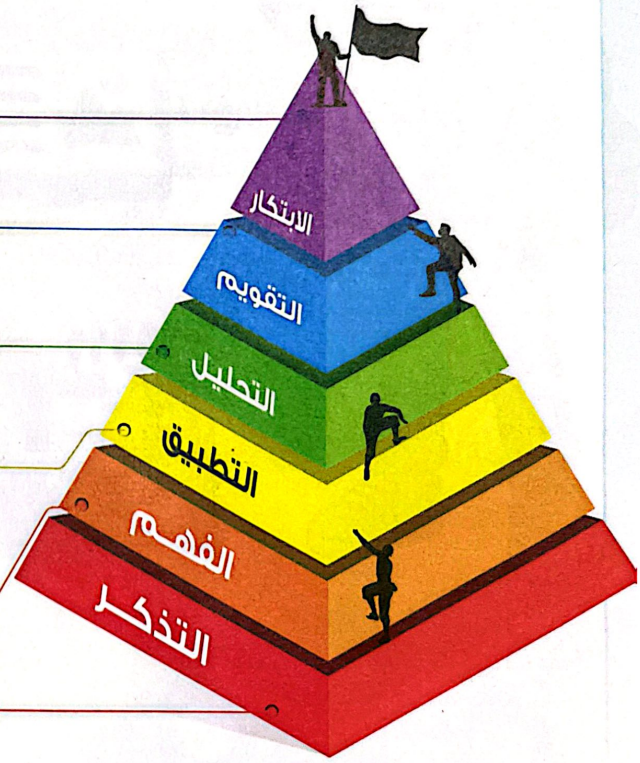
الحكم على المعلومات لاتخاذ القرارات
قيّم - فنّد - قرّر - أعط رأيك

تجزئة الفكرة إلى عناصرها وتحديد العلاقات بينها
فرّق - دلل - حلل

استخدام المعلومات فى مواقف مشابهة جديدة
اربط - طبّق - استخدم

إدراك معنى المعلومات وشرحها
قارن - استنتج - وضح بمثال

استرجاع المعلومات السابق دراستها
اذكر - عرّف - حدّد - عدّد



Scanned with CamScanner

Your Guidebook

Find your way around!

1 Pre-Assessment

ابدأ واستعد لرحلة التعلم



الهدف منه تجهيز الطالب لرحلة التعلم
عن طريق ثلاث جولات:

الجولة الأولى: تحديد مستوى الطالب وما يتقنه ويحتاجه

الجولة الثانية: حسب نتيجتك فى كل مستوى،
تعلم ثم أعد المحاولة لاجتياز كل مستوى

الجولة الثالثة: المهارات الأساسية التى يستعد بها الطالب لدراسة منهجه

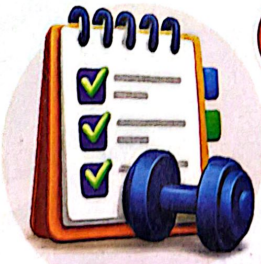


2 Lessons



عرض شامل مبسط لدروس الوحدة
مدعم بالصور التوضيحية

3 Sample Tests on lessons



اختبارات على الدروس.



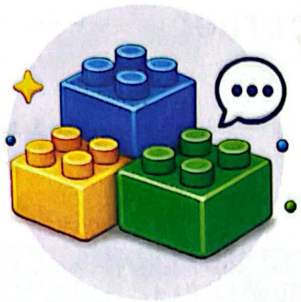
Scanned with CamScanner

Keep going on your way



4 Accumulative Dictation

- إملاء تراكمى على الدروس لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية



5 Skills

- كيفية التعامل مع مهارة القراءة
- مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ
- تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة
- اكتب موضوعك خطوة بخطوة
- فقرات إنشائية هامة



6 Review through the Exam

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال كتاب الطالب والتدريبات واختبارات المحافظات



7 Sample Tests on Units

اختبارات على كل وحدة:

١- اختبار المعاصر

٢- اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب، كتاب التدريبات والاختبارات السابقة

Scanned with CamScanner

Keep going on your way



8 Story

عرض **جديد** للقصة المقررة.



9 Poetry corner

عرض **جديد** للشعر.

في نهاية الكتاب

10 El-Moasser Follow-up



- كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى

يصرف مجانًا مع الكتاب

11 El-Moasser Interactive Notebook

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية والمراجعة النهائية:



مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد

Scanned with CamScanner



EL-MOASSER

enjoy learning English

El-Moasser

Scan & Listen



Scan Qr code

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

لـو عايـز تتعلم نطق الكلمات صح

El-Moasser Follow-up

Homework & Assessments



كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى

تستخدم بالتوازى مع كتاب الشرح يوميًا، أسبوعيًا وشهريًا.

Scanned with CamScanner

CONTENTS

PART ONE: Pre-Assessment

Round 1 Assess Yourself 10

Round 2 Learn and Return 11

Round 3 Unlock Your Grade 6 Journey 14

PART TWO

THEME ONE: I discover myself

UNIT 1:

Express yourself ! 21

UNIT 2:

Home is where the heart is 66

THEME TWO: Myself and others

UNIT 3:

School time! 114

UNIT 4:

We can make a difference ! 159

Non-Fiction Reader:

Hassan Fathy : A biography 202

Fiction Reader :

A wonderful surprise 206

Poetry corner 229

PART THREE

El-Moasser Follow-up 236

Listening Texts 248

Answers of Topics 252



Scanned with CamScanner

PART 1

Pre-Assessment

ابدأ واستعد لرحلة التعلم



Round 1

Assess Yourself

اختبار لقياس ما يتقنه و يحتاجه الطالب قبل بداية المنهج.



الهدف منه تجهيز الطالب لرحلة التعلم عن طريق ثلاث جولات:

الجولة الاولى: تحديد مستوى الطالب وما يتقنه و يحتاجه.

الجولة الثانية: حسب نتيجتك فى كل مستوى، تعلم ثم اعد المحاولة لاجتياز كل مستوى.

الجولة الثالثة: المهارات الأساسية التى يستعد بها الطالب لدراسة منهجه.

Round 2

Learn and Return



الطالب الحاصل على:

1. الدرجات [6 - 5] ينتقل إلى المستوى التالى أو إلى الجولة الثالثة [ابدأ رحلتك الى الصف الدراسى]
2. الدرجات [4 - 1] ينتقل إلى جزء تعلم وأعد المحاولة لإتقان المطلوب منه ثم يقوم بإعادة المحاولة مرة اخرى.

ينتقل الطالب إلى الجولة الثالثة فى حالة اجتياز المستويين الأول والثانى بحصوله على الدرجات [6 - 5] فى كل مستوى.

Round 3

Unlock Your Grade 6 Journey



المهارات الأساسية التى تساعد الطالب على التعامل مع الصف الدراسى



امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق! لنبدأ الرحلة معًا!

Scanned with CamScanner

Round 1

Assess Yourself

قيّم نفســك



اختبر نفسك واكتشف ما تتقنه وما تحتاجه للتدريب قبل أن تبدأ رحلتك الجديدة.

Level 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. [6 Marks]

1. Natural resources are the same as ..... materials.
   a. low b. row c. raw d. high
2. The smell of something is called a/an ..... .
   a. odor b. texture c. mass d. volume
3. Objects such as rocks are ..... .
   a. hard b. smooth c. sticky d. weak
4. Whales and dolphins are ..... animals.
   a. desert b. marine c. grassland d. forest
5. My ..... is to win the competition.
   a. goal b. gap c. score d. hobby
6. There are different ..... like grasslands and rainforests.
   a. ecosystems b. illnesses c. leaves d. insects

5-6 marks **Great!** Move To level 2 — رائع! انتقل إلى المستوى الثانى.

1-4 marks Move to Learn & Return Round 1 — انتقل إلى جزء تعلم وأعد المحاولة 1

Level 2

1 Read, order and write. [3 Marks]

1. favorite - flamingo - My - bird - the - was.
.....
2. to - you - traveled - Have - ever - Luxor ?
.....
3. use - to carry - We - baskets - things.
.....

2 Write FIFTY (50) words about. [3 Marks]

"Environment"

.....
.....
.....
.....

5-6 marks **Great!** Move To Grade 6 — رائع! انتقل إلى الصف السادس

1-4 marks Move To Learn & Return Round 2 — انتقل إلى جزء تعلم واعد المحاولة 2

Scanned with CamScanner

Round 2

1. Learn and Return 1

تعلم ثم اعد المحاولة لاجتياز المستوى الأول



Vocabulary

Environment

mangrove forests	غابات المانجروف
national park	محمية طبيعية
thick	سميك
illnesses	أمراض
ecosystem	نظام بيئى
living things	الكائنات الحية
non-living things	الكائنات غير الحية
community	مجتمع
global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى
hike	نزهة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام
villager	قروى (أحد سكان القرية)
marine	بحرى

Natural resources

raw materials	مواد خام
fixed	ثابت
pale	شاحب - باهت (اللون)
container	حاوية
fossil fuel	وقود حفرى
state	حالة
mine	منجم
flax	نبات الكتان
fertile	خصبة
linen	قماش الكتان
limestone	حجر جيرى
texture	ملمس

Nature

dunes	كثبان رملية
valley	وادى
continent	قارة
natural wonders	عجائب طبيعية
waterfall	شلال مياه
canyon	أخدود (وادى ضيق)
climate change	تغير المناخ

Extreme weather

storm-chaser	مطارد العواصف
hurricane	إعصار
dust storm	عاصفة ترابية
thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
flood	فيضان
storm	عاصفة
volcanoes	براكين

Scanned with CamScanner

2. Learn and Return 2

تعلم ثم اعد المحاولة لاجتياز المستوى الثانى

How to make a sentence

• جزء ينمى لدى الطالب مهارة استخدام الكلمات وترتيبها لتكوين جملة صحيحة.

1 Parts of speech

ا. أجزاء الكلام

تنقسم الكلمات إلى عدة أنواع يتعرف التلميذ فى هذا الجزء على بعض منها.

1 noun الاسم


goat
عنزة


bag
حقيبة


boy
ولد


Salma
سلمى

2 Verb الفعل


eat
يأكل


read
يقرأ


play
يلعب


run
يجرى

3 adjective الصفة


small ant
نملة صغيرة


big camel
جمل كبير

4 preposition حرف جر

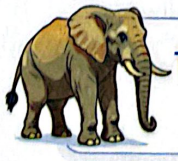

in the morning
فى الصباح


on the table
على المنضدة

5 pronoun ضمير



Adam is tall. He isn't short.
آدم طويل. هو ليس قصير.



The elephant is big. It isn't small.
الفيل كبير. هو ليس صغير.

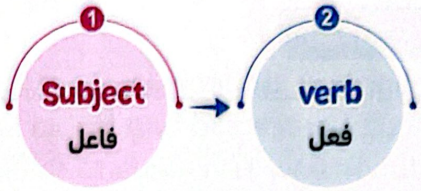
- معرفة التلميذ لنوع الكلمة يساعده على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة لتكوين جملة.

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Sentence

٢. الجملة

Subject الفاعل



Omar الفاعل

Omar plays tennis.

He plays tennis.

الفاعل He وهو ضمير فاعل
يحل محل الفاعل Omar

الفاعل قد يكون [اسم] أو يكون ضمير من [ضمائر الفاعل] التالية :

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

I أنا	He هو	She هى	It هو/ هى	You أنت / أنتم	They هم	We نحن
عندما يتحدث الشخص عن نفسه	عندما نتحدث عن شخص مفرد مذكر	عندما نتحدث عن شخص مفرد مؤنث	عندما نتحدث عن شيء مفرد غير عاقل	عندما نخاطب شخص أو أكثر	عندما نتحدث عن اثنين أو أكثر	عندما يذكر الشخص نفسه مع الاخرين

الضمائر المفردة



He She It



I



You

الضمائر الجمع



They



We



You

Scanned with CamScanner

Round 3

Unlock Your Grade 6 Journey

ابدأ رحلتك نحو الصف السادس الابتدائى
للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات



Specifications for Sixth Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧ للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات

1 Listen and answer the questions : *(6 Marks)*

An unseen listening text of about **SEVENTY (70)** words at the appropriate difficulty level for **Primary SIX** followed by **FOUR (4)** open-ended questions are provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer the questions. *(One mark and a half each)*

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال الاول فى الورقة الامتحانية : استمع إلى النص واجب عن الأسئلة.
يسمع الطالب إلى نصًا مكون من (٧٠) كلمة ويعطى أربعة (٤) أسئلة يقوم بالإجابة عليها بعد سماع النص.

Children in Ancient Egypt did lots of things in their free time. They enjoyed singing and dancing. They played musical instruments. They had lots of different toys to play with. They loved playing board games. The most popular board game was senet. Children loved swimming in the Nile.

1. When did children in Ancient Egypt do lots of things ?
.....
2. What did they enjoy doing ?
.....
3. What was the most popular board game ?
.....
4. Where did children love swimming ?
.....

Specifications for Sixth Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧ للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات

2 Read and complete the text/dialogue with words from the box : *(4 Marks)*

An unseen text from **EIGHTY (80)** to **NINETY (90)** words OR a dialogue of **FOUR (4)** exchanges with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. A list of **FIVE (5)** separate words related to vocabulary is also given. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text or the dialogue with **ONE** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full. *(One mark each)*

Scanned with CamScanner

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال الثاني في الورقة الامتحانية : اقرأ وأكمل النص/المحادثة بكلمات من المربع.
يعطى الطالب نصًا مكون من [٨٠] إلى [٩٠] كلمة أو محادثة مكونة من [٤] تبادلات حوارية بها اربع فراغات يقوم الطالب بإكمال هذه الفراغات بكلمات من الخمسة كلمات في المربع المعطاة له.

Citadel - visit - fort - harbor - trip

I live in Alexandria. Alexandria has a very important (1) ..... . It's the oldest and biggest in Egypt. We went on a boat (2) ..... from the harbor at sunset. It was beautiful because we could see the city and all the boats on the sea. We visited the (3) ..... of Qaitbay, too. It is a very old (4) ..... that people used to protect the city.

◄ **الإجابة على السؤال :**

اقرأ الفقرة والكلمات جيدًا ثم ضعها في مكانها الصحيح.

- الإجابة رقم [٣] هى [Citadel] لأنه يتطلب وضع اسم [noun] ووجود [Qaitbay]

Specifications for Sixth Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧ للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات

3 Read the following text and answer the questions: *[5 Marks]*

An unseen literary or informational text from **ONE HUNDRED (100) to ONE HUNDRED TWENTY (120)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **primary SIX**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options each dealing with the following reading comprehension skills: *[Half a mark each]*

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

B. TWO (2) open-ended questions dealing with **TWO** of the following reading comprehension skills: *[Two marks each]*

- Describe the relationship between a series of historical events, scientific ideas or concepts, or steps in technical procedures in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Compare and contrast the most important points and key details presented in a text.
- Determine the central message, lesson, or moral and explain how it is conveyed through key details in the text.

Scanned with CamScanner

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار



السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية : اقرأ النص التالى واجب عن الأسئلة.
يعطى الطالب نصًا مكون من [١٠٠] إلى [١٢٠] كلمة يقرأه ثم يقوم بالإجابة على نوعين من الأسئلة.
[A] : سؤالين اختيار من متعدد يختار الطالب الإجابة الصحيحة من بين [٤] خيارات.
[B] : سؤالين من الأسئلة المقالية يجيب عنها الطالب.

Mariam is thirteen years old. She lives in Luxor with her family. Her father is a doctor. He works in a big hospital. Her mother is a teacher. She has got two brothers. Hany is twelve years old and Emad is nine. Hany is interested in football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Emad goes swimming every Friday. There's a swimming pool **near** their house. Her grandparents live with them. Her grandmother is very kind because she gives her a lot of presents. Her grandfather is 65 years old. He always tells the children stories.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- **Demonstrate understanding of specific details.**

1. Mariam's father works in a ..... .
   a. school b. hospital c. factory d. theater

- **Determine the meaning of words and phrases.**

2. The underlined word **near** is the opposite of ..... .
   a. close b. high c. far d. low

B. Answer the following questions.

- **Describe the relationship between a series of historical events, scientific ideas or concepts, or steps in a text.**

3. Why is her grandma kind ?
   - Because she gives Mariam a lot of presents.

- **Make logical inferences from the text.**

4. What can you infer about Mariam's relationship with her grandparents ?
   - She has a close and loving relationship with them.

Specifications for Sixth Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧ للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات

The Reader

4 A. Read and write YES or NO : *[5 Marks]*

[1 Mark]

TWO (2) sentences related to the Reader are provided. Learners are asked to read the sentences and write **(YES)** or **(NO)** in front of each sentence. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of vocabulary, events, characters and setting of the Reader.

[Half a mark each]

B. Read and answer the questions : *[4 Marks]*

TWO (2) open-ended questions are provided. Learners are asked to answer the questions given. The questions should test learners' knowledge of events, characters in the Reader. *[Two marks each]*

Scanned with CamScanner

Practice تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

القصة المقررة : "A Wonderful Surprise"

السؤال الرابع فى الورقة الامتحانية :

يعطى الطالب مجموعتين من الأسئلة على القصة المقررة تقيس معرفة الطالب بأحداث وشخصيات ومكان وزمان أحداث القصة.

(أ) اقرأ واكتب (نعم) أو (لا) :

وهو عبارة عن جملتين على القصة على الطالب أن يقرأ كل جملة ويكتب (نعم) أو (لا) طبقًا لأحداث القصة.

(ب) اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة :

وهو عبارة عن سؤالين بأداة استفهام على الطالب أن يجيب على تلك الأسئلة.

Specifications for Sixth Year Primary 2026-2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧ للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *[2 Marks]*

FOUR (4) MCQs based on **structure** are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer out of the **FOUR (4)** options given.

[Half a mark each]

Practice تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال الخامس في الورقة الامتحانية : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

سؤال الاختيار من متعدد هو أربعة [٤] جمل على القواعد اللغوية، وعلى الطالب أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة من بين [٤] اختيارات معطاة.

1. She likes ..... sports after school.
   a. play b. playing c. played d. plays
2. Swimming is the ..... popular activity.
   a. less b. many c. most d. more
3. If you ..... tired, go to bed.
   a. feel b. feeling c. feels d. felt
4. Ali is very hungry. Is there ..... for him to eat ?
   a. everything b. anybody c. anything d. nothing

◄ الإجابة على السؤال :

• رقم (١) نختار الإجابة [b. playing] لوجود الفعل [like] قبلها والذى يحتاج إلى [+ to inf. / inf. + ing] بعده.

Specifications for Sixth Year Primary 2026-2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧ للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: *[1 Mark]*

Learners are given **TWO (2)** sentences of not less than **SIX (6)** words each (affirmative, negative & interrogative). The words of each sentence are scrambled. Learners are asked to put the words in order to make a correct sentence.

[Half a mark each]

Scanned with CamScanner

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال السادس في الورقة الامتحانية : ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل.
سؤال الترتيب عبارة عن جملتان لا تقل كل منهما عن [٦] كلمات غير مرتبة وعلى الطالب أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جمل صحيحة.

1. interesting - an - **Football** - is - sport.

.....

2. favorite - visit - **What's** - place - your - to ?

.....



◄ **الإجابة على السؤال :**

- الجملة الأولى نبدأ بالفاعل [Football] ثم الفعل [is] ثم أداة النكرة [an] والصفة [interesting] قبل الاسم [sport] لأن الصفة تأتى قبل الأسم التى تصفه.

Specifications for Sixth Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف السادس الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧ للمدارس الرسمية والخاصة لغات

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements: *(7 Marks)*

Learners are asked to write **(a paragraph/email/personal profile/ a report/a short story)** of about **SEVENTY (70)** words using the given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file (including questions only) etc.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas - Two marks for vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال السابع في الورقة الامتحانية : اكتب نصًا مكون من [٧٠] كلمة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية.

فى سؤال الكتابة يطلب من الطالب كتابة [فقرة انشائية - رسالة بريد الكترونى - ملف شخصى - تقرير / قصة قصيرة] من [٧٠] كلمة باستخدام العناصر الارشادية المعطاة.

Scanned with CamScanner

1 How to write a paragraph: كيفية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية

◄ القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا ١ سم) فى السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
٢. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
٣. أن تضع (.) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.
٤. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
٥. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونّوع بدايات الجمل.
٦. استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.
٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
٨. اجتهد فى تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
٩. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

2 How to write an email : كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكترونى

From	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل
To	عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للمرسل إليه
Subject	موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you.

..... موضوع الرسالة .....

.....

.....

Yours,

اسم الراسل

Scanned with CamScanner

THEME 1

I discover myself





Scanned with CamScanner



UNIT 1

Express yourself !

عبر عن نفسك !

تنويه
علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

Aims of Unit One : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى :

In this unit I will ...

- talk about different creative activities.
- understand and use the zero conditional.
- listen to and understand an interview.
- understand and use prepositional phrases.
- read and understand a poem.
- read and understand an article.
- write a report using time clauses and sequencing.
- read and understand a story.

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- أتحدث عن أنشطة إبداعية مختلفة.
- أفهم وأستخدم الحالة الصفرية.
- أستمع وأفهم مقابلة شخصية.
- أفهم وأستخدم شِبْه الجملة.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصيدة.
- أقرأ وأفهم مقال.
- أكتب تقرير مستخدمًا الروابط الزمنية وتسلسل الأحداث.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة.

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 1&2

- How creative are you ?
- Language



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

creative	مبدع - إبداعى	clay	طين خزفى - صلصال
relaxing	مريح	design	تصميم - يصمم
exhibition	معرض - عرض	beads	حبات الخرز
lid	غطاء (زجاجة - عبوة ...)	uncomfortable	غير مريح - منزعج
messy	غير مرتب - مُتسخ	competition	مسابقة - منافسة

• Activities & arts

	أنشطة و فنون		
junk modeling	تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة	computer animation	الرسوم المتحركة باستخدام الحاسوب
making a collage	فن صناعة الأعمال الفنية من الملصقات	designing clothes	تصميم الملابس
pottery	فن صناعة الأوانى الفخارية	outdoor art	الفن الخارجى
sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت	making jewelry	صناعة الحلى

• Extra vocabulary

appear	يظهر	artist	فنان
shells	أصداف	luckily	لحسن الحظ
fabric	نسيج - قماش	skills	مهارات
cardboard	ورق مقوى	suppose	يفترض
paint	دهان - طلاء - يلوّن	agree	يوافق
bracelet	أسورة	gallery	معرض
disappear	يختفى	create	يبدع - يبتكر
necklace	عُقد - قلادة	cloth	قماش
temporary	مؤقت	recycle	يعيد تدوير
patterns	أنماط	melt	يذوب

UNIT 1

- Did you know ?
- When you are doing a creative activity, you focus on what you're doing. You don't think about your daily life, or even what time it is ! This is often called "being in the zone".

• عندما تقوم بنشاط إبداعى، فإنك تركز على ما تفعله، لا تفكر فى حياتك اليومية، أو حتى ما هو الوقت ! هذا ما يسمى غالبًا "حالة التركيز الكامل".

Scanned with CamScanner

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

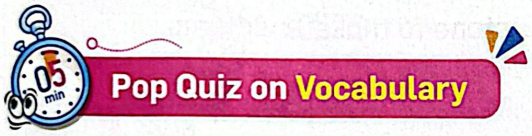
Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
send	يرسل	sent	sent
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
messy	not clean or tidy
disappear	to go away; you can't see it any more
uncomfortable	not feeling nice on your skin
relaxing	making you happy and not worried

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

to get you excited	تجعلك متحمس	according to	وفقًا لـ
recycled cloth	قماش معاد تدويره	instead of	بدلًا من
save money	يدخر المال	aged between	يتراوح أعمارهم بين
a sense of connection	الشعور بالترابط		





▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If you design clothes, you can save money by using recycled ..... .
   a. paper b. copper c. clay d. cloth
   [التقييمات الشهرية / اكتوبر / الإسكندرية - غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٦]
2. To ..... means to go away.
   a. watch b. appear c. disappear d. enter
3. My favorite ..... is junk modeling.
   [التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / أسيوط - منفلوط ٢٠٢٦]
   a. food b. activity c. subject d. sport
4. He is the ..... who creates beautiful outdoor art.
   [التقييمات الشهرية / اكتوبر / القاهرة - حدائق القبة ٢٠٢٥]
   a. vet b. artist c. doctor d. farmer
5. This competition is for children ..... between five and fifteen years.
   a. disappointed b. disappeared c. aged d. appeared

Scanned with CamScanner

6. I want to win the creative project ..... .
a. hotel b. competition c. kitchen d. restaurant

7. When something is ..... , it's not clean or tidy.
a. calm b. messy c. clear d. quiet

8. To make jewelry, you can use different colored ..... .
a. pens b. rulers c. beads d. erasers

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Show your creativity	express	There are many things you can do to express yourself.
	junk modeling	Junk modeling is a creative way to use old things.
	recycled cloth	You can use recycled cloth to save money and help the planet.
	collage	You can make a beautiful collage with material, paint and colored paper.
	beads	Use glass or plastic beads to make beautiful necklaces and bracelets.
	sculpture	We could use clay or stone to make sculptures.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص
الاستماع

Show your creativity !

Show us how creative you are! We want children aged between five and fifteen to send us their creative work. Your work will appear in a big art **exhibition**[1] in the city museum! Here are some ideas to get you excited.

[1] معرض
[2] فن صناعة الأوانى الفخارية

Junk modeling

Junk modeling is a creative way to use old things that you can find in the house. What can you make with a cardboard box, plastic bottles and lids ? Use your creative skills to make lots of interesting things!

Pottery[2]

Do you like getting your hands messy ? Then try pottery! Use clay to make a bowl, a cup or a vase. Then you can paint it using fun colors and interesting patterns.

Scanned with CamScanner

Designing clothes

If you can't find anything you want to wear, how about designing and making your own clothes ? You can use **recycled cloth**[3] to save money and help the planet.

[3] قماش معاد تدويره
[4] صناعة الحلى
[5] صلصال
[6] مهارات

Making a collage

Why not make a beautiful collage with material, paint and colored paper. Think of ways to put them together to make a picture.

Making jewelry[4]

Use glass or plastic beads to make necklaces and bracelets.

Sculpture

You could use wood, **clay**[5] or stone to make a sculpture of a person or an animal, or any interesting shape.

Outdoor art

Use the things you can find in nature to make outdoor art, for example leaves or shells.

Computer animation

If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer **skills**[6] to make animation.

There are so many things you can do to express yourself !



Learn 1. The creative work will appear in a big art ..... .
a. ship b. market c. show d. exhibition

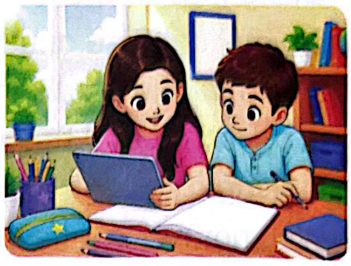
Practice 2. If you like....., use clay to make a vase.
a. jewelry b. collage c. pottery d. music

Andy Goldsworthy

Andy Goldsworthy is a famous British **artist**[1] who works both with and in nature. He creates sculptures that are made with natural **materials**[2], such as flowers, leaves, snow, grass, and wood. To do this, he uses only his hands and simple tools. Then, instead of putting his works in a **gallery**[3], he presents them outdoors in their natural environment. Because they are in the wind, sun, and rain, the works are usually temporary. They give us a sense of **connection**[4] with the natural world and the way that it changes through the seasons. This is because the sculptures will change how they look according to each season. So for example, a sculpture made of snow will melt and disappear if the weather is not very cold.

[1] فنان
[2] مواد خام
[3] معرض
[4] تواصل

Scanned with CamScanner



Noha : Have you heard about this competition, Hesham ? It's for any kind of **creative**[1] projects. I'd like to enter.

Hesham : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make ?

Noha : I don't know. My favorite **activity**[2] is painting. I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

Hesham : Hmm. If I paint, I don't feel happy. I'm not very good at it!

Noha : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a creative project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!

Hesham : I prefer making things with my hands. I like **sculpture**[3] or junk modeling, but my favorite is pottery. I think it's really relaxing!

Noha : Oh, I don't agree. I don't like pottery because I don't like getting my hands **messy**[4]. I think it's really uncomfortable to have clay on my hands.

Hesham : But if you paint, you get paint on your hands.

Noha : Well, yes, I suppose you're right. Luckily, the paint disappears quickly when I wash them!

[1] ابداعى
[2] نشاط
[3] فن النحت
[4] متسخ

III Language

Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

Usage : الاستخدام

A. We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are true for us. نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق وأشياء حقيقية بالنسبة لنا.

Formation : التكوين

We form it using if or when, and the present simple or a modal like can : يتم صياغة الحالة الصفرية باستخدام when/if وزمن المضارع البسيط أو فعل ناقص مثل can :

Scanned with CamScanner

Statement الجملة الخبرية → If إذا / When عندما + present simple, present simple/ $\frac{\text{can}}{\text{can't}}$ + inf.

ex. - If / When you paint, you get paint on your hands.
- If I go to bed late, I can't wake up early in the morning.

B. We also use the zero conditional to give instructions or make suggestions. To do this, we form it using if / when, and the imperative.

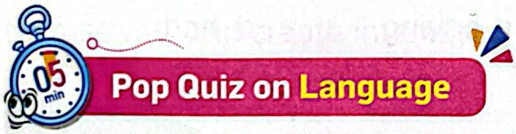
يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الحالة الصفرية لإعطاء التعليمات أو تقديم اقتراحات. وللقيام بذلك، نستخدم if/when وصيغة الأمر.

If / When + مضارع بسيط + , $\frac{\text{imperative}}{\text{صيغة الامر}}$.

ex. - If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.
- When you arrive at school, come to the classroom.

Wh- Q. السؤال بـ (أداة استفهام) → Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + مضارع بسيط...?

ex. - What do you do if/ when you feel sad?
= If/When you feel sad, what do you do?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If you heat water, it ..... . *(Sharqia – East Zagazig 2026)*
   a. boil b. boils c. boiled d. would boil
2. If you mix blue and yellow, you ..... green. *(Dakahlia – East Mansoura 2026)*
   a. get b. gets c. getting d. got
3. SB If you want to get up early, you can ..... an alarm.
   a. to set b. setting c. set d. sets
   (Minia - Maghagha 2025)
4. If I put food in the fridge, it ..... cold. *(Alexandria – Gomrok 2025)*
   a. become b. became c. becomes d. becoming
5. When she ..... carefully to the teacher, she understands.
   a. listens b. listening c. listened d. listen
   (Ismailia – El Tal El Kebir 2025)

Scanned with CamScanner

6. You can't ..... early if you take the bus.

a. arrives b. arrived c. arriving d. arrive

7. How do you feel when you ..... to school ?

a. going b. to go c. goes d. go

8. I feel excited when I ..... the science museum.

a. visited b. visiting c. visit d. visits

9. The pot breaks ..... you drop it on the floor.

a. but b. if c. so d. while

10. AB When my dad ..... the plants, they die.

a. isn't watering b. don't water c. doesn't water d. won't water

11. SB When you go to the beach, ... a sunhat.

a. taking b. take c. takes d. took

12. My father ..... angry when I arrive home late.

a. get b. got c. gets d. getting

13. I always take my umbrella when it ..... .

a. rain b. rains c. raining d. rained

14. If I ..... a toothache, I can go to the dentist.

a. have b. has c. having d. had

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. If I ..... (did) something creative, I feel happy.
2. If I ..... (be) tired, I go to bed early.
3. Plants die if you ..... (not) water them.
4. If your sister is sad, ... (talking) to her.
5. When you ..... (heats) water, it boils.
6. When he walks in the park, he ..... (could) feel relaxed.
7. ..... (Where) it rains, we can't play outside.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 1 On Lessons 1 & 2



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What are Hesham and Noha talking about ?

.....

2. What is Noha's favorite activity ?

.....

3. How does Noha feel when she paints ?

.....

4. What is Hesham's favorite activity ?

.....

(Dakahlia – English Supervision 2025)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

activities - recycled - clothes - creative - express

Children aged 5-15 are invited to take part in an art exhibition. There are many creative [1] ....., including junk modeling, pottery, and designing [2] ..... . These activities help children [3] ..... themselves, and create interesting works of art. They can show how [4] ..... they are.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Andy Goldsworthy is a famous British artist who works both with and in nature. He creates sculptures that are made with natural materials, such as flowers, leaves, snow, grass, and wood. To do this, he uses only his hands and simple tools. Then, instead of putting his works in a gallery, he presents them outdoors in their natural environment. Because they are in the wind, sun, and rain, the works are usually temporary. They give us a sense of connection with the natural world and the way that it changes through the seasons. This is because the sculptures will change how they look according to each season. So for example, a sculpture made of snow will melt and **disappear** if the weather is not very cold.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is " ..... ".

a. A famous artist b. Weather c. Natural world d. Snow

Scanned with CamScanner

2. The opposite of the underlined word "**disappear**" is ..... .

a. plant b. put c. appear d. use

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What materials does Andy use for sculptures ?

.....

4. What happens to a snow sculpture if the weather is hot ?

.....

(Cairo – Al-Khalifa and Mokatam 2024 / Luxor – Esna 2026)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When the sun ....., the plants make their food.

a. rise b. rising c. rose d. rises

(Alexandria – Montazah 2025)

2. If we freeze water, it ..... into ice.

a. turned b. turn c. turns d. turning

3. My teacher gets angry when I ..... do my homework.

a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. isn't

4. What do we get when we ..... red and blue ?

a. mixes b. mix c. mixed d. mixing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Noha – Why – like – doesn't – pottery ?

[التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / الشرقية - شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٦]

.....

2. favorite – junk – My – modeling – is – activity.

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A competition"

Guiding elements:

• creative • junk modeling • recycled • art exhibition

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 3&4

- A night of colors
- Beautiful sculptures



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

shout	يصيح - يصرخ	flash	وميض - ومضة	sight	منظر - مشهد
cheer	يهتف - يشجع	jewels	جواهر	concert	حفل موسيقى
breath	نفس	sculptor	نحات	explode	ينفجر
brilliantly	بتألق	bubbles	فقاعات	materials	مواد خام
bang = blast	فرقعة/صوت انفجار	bright = shiny	لامع	poet	شاعر
verse	بيت (من الشعر)	fireworks	ألعاب نارية	still	ثابت
irregular	غير منتظم	reflect	يعكس	float	يطفو

• Extra vocabulary

noisily	بضجيج / بصخب/ بضوضاء	musician	موسيقار	celebrate	يحتفل
sailing ship	سفينة إبحار شراعية	mirror	مرآة	pipe	ماسورة - أنبوب
burn	يحترق / يشتعل	metal	معدن	rhyme	قافية - يُقفّى
public	عام	damage	يدمر - يتلف	rockets	صواريخ

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
shine	تشرق - تبرق	shone	shone
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
verse	a part of the poem
rhyme	when two words sound the same at the end of the word
bubble	a liquid ball full of air
reflect	when a mirror shows an image
material	what something is made from , for example , gold , clay , wood
sculptor	a person who makes sculptures

Scanned with CamScanner

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

as bright as day	مشرقة مثل النهار	act on stage	يمثل على خشبة المسرح
shoot up into the air	ينطلق فى الهواء	look out far	ينظر بعيدًا
take off	يقلع / ينطلق [مثل الصاروخ]	give it away	يتخلص منه
hold our breath	نحبس / نكتم أنفاسنا	far away	بعيد
up high	عاليًا / لأعلى		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



▸ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. A/An ..... is a liquid ball full of air.
   a. square b. image c. bubble d. triangle

[التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / سوهاج / طما ٢٠٢٦]

2. A ..... is when two words sound the same at the end of the word.
   a. rhyme b. story c. subject d. book
3. When the mirror shows your image, it ..... it.
   a. cuts b. does c. makes d. reflects

[التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / القاهرة / الشروق ٢٠٢٥]

4. A ..... is a person who makes sculptures.
   a. farmer b. teacher c. sculptor d. driver

[التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / المنوفية / شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٥]

5. How long can you ..... your breath underwater ?
   a. catch b. hold c. walk d. go
6. A ..... is a part of the poem.
   a. sight b. poet c. verse d. shape

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Anish Kapoor's sculptures	sculptor	Anish Kapoor is a sculptor.
	materials	He uses different materials and shapes for his works.
	math	He understands math and how materials work.
	famous sculpture	Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture.
	Cloud Gate	Cloud Gate in Chicago is one of Kapoor's sculptures.
	reflect	It's made of metal and is like a huge mirror, which reflects the sky.
	popular	Cloud Gate is a very popular sight to visit.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

A Night of Colors

We stand together in the cold, black night,
The sky is dark and far away.
Everything is quiet and still, until - BANG!
The lights make the sky as bright as day.
Rockets shoot up into the air,
We shout and cheer, watching them fly.
Colors burn brilliantly against the black,
We see them dance happily through the sky.
The sound fills my ears, as each rocket takes off, Exploding noisily with flashes of light.
Beads of red, yellow, silver, and gold,
Are beautiful jewels in the black night.
With blasts so loud and rockets up high,
A colorful fire against the stars.
The sky shines brightly with light and color,
We hold our breath, looking out far.



Tip

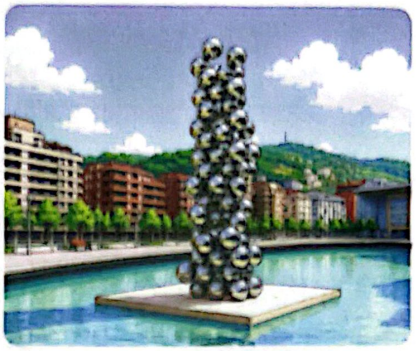
- **In a poem, the poet sometimes uses words or something that is not real to help the reader imagine the way something real looks. For example, the fireworks in the sky are not really jewels, but they are so beautiful that they look like jewels.**

في القصيدة، يستخدم الشاعر أحيانًا كلمات أو أشياء غير حقيقية ليساعد القارئ على تخيل شكل شيء حقيقي. على سبيل المثال ، الألعاب النارية في السماء ليست جواهر حقيقية لكنها من شدة جمالها تبدو كالجواهر .

Scanned with CamScanner

Anish Kapoor's sculptures

Anish Kapoor is a **sculptor**[1]. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes and materials. Kapoor makes large pieces of art for public places all over the world.

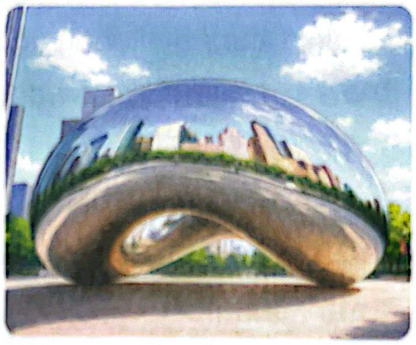


Tall Tree and the Eye

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous **sculpture**[2] by Kapoor. You can see it outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 metal balls.

The metal is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The balls look like bubbles which are **floating**[3]!



Cloud Gate

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math and how materials work. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

For example, in Tall Tree and the Eye, Kapoor uses metal because it is a strong material. It's very good for outdoor sculptures because bad weather doesn't damage it.

Over the years, Kapoor has made many other famous sculptures. Another famous Kapoor's sculpture is Cloud Gate, in Chicago, USA.

Cloud Gate is very high - people can walk under it! It is made of metal and is like a huge mirror, which reflects the sky, buildings, and the people around it. It is a very popular sight to visit in Chicago.

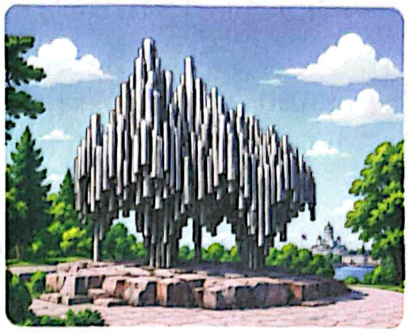
(1) نحات
(2) تمثال منحوت
(3) يطفو

Scanned with CamScanner

The Sibelius monument

The Sibelius **monument**[1] was built in 1967 to celebrate the famous **musician**[2] Jean Sibelius, who died in 1957.

Sibelius was from Finland, a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at concerts and in **theaters**[3] all around the world.



The Sibelius monument

The sculpture was created by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes of different sizes in an **irregular**[4] shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide. Hiltunen wanted the sculpture to look like the way Sibelius's music sounds. You can see this sculpture in the Sibelius Park, in Helsinki, the capital city of Finland.

[1] أثر
[2] موسيقار
[3] مسارح
[4] غير منتظم

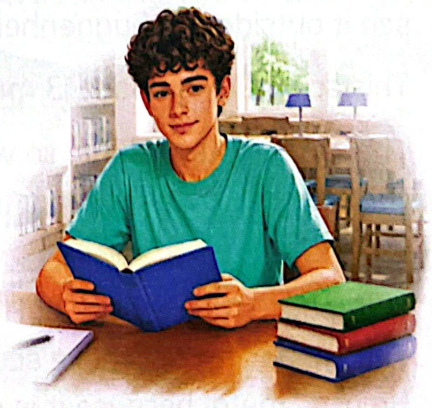
Mahmoud Mukhtar was an Egyptian sculptor in the early 20th century. One of his most famous sculptures is Nahdet Misr, which was first displayed in 1928.



A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط



Scanned with CamScanner

Test 2 On Lessons 3 & 4



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Anish Kapoor do ?

.....

2. Where was he born ?

.....

3. What did he study ?

.....

4. What does he like to use ?

.....

(Qena - Qift 2025)

2 AB Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sculpture – steel – concerts – created – sculptor

Jean Sibelius was a famous musician from Finland, a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at [1] ..... and in theaters all around the world. The Sibelius monument was a [2] ..... . It was [3] ..... by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 [4] ..... pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. You can see it outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 metal balls.

The metal is very **shiny**, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The balls look like bubbles which are floating!

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math and how materials work. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time. He uses metal because it is a strong material.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "A ..... ".
   a. material b. museum c. sculpture d. subject
2. The underlined word "**shiny**" means ..... .
   a. bright b. terrible c. different d. dark

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why does Kapoor use metal ?

.....

4. Where can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If it is cold, I can ..... my jacket. *(Ismailia – South Ismailia 2026)*
   a. wear b. wore c. wears d. wearing
2. If you ..... hard, you get good grades. *(Giza – South Giza 2025)*
   a. studies b. study c. studying d. studied
3. If you don't have new ideas, ... online.
   a. looks b. look c. looking d. looked
4. What ..... you do if you feel hot ?
   a. are b. did c. were d. do

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. AB Mukhtar – an – sculptor – was – Mahmoud – Egyptian.

.....

2. SB study - Where - Kapoor - did - art ? *(Beni Suef – Nasser 2026)*

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

A famous sculptor

Guiding elements:

• artist • understand • metal • damage

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner



Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSONS 1&2

.....	مبدع	sculpture	.....
.....	معرض	messy	.....
.....	صلصال	skills	.....
.....	قماش	beads	.....
.....	عقد/قلادة	design	.....
.....	مؤقت	lid	.....

LESSONS 3&4

.....	نفس	flash	.....
.....	جواهر	materials	.....
.....	حفلة موسيقية	bang	.....
.....	نحات	fireworks	.....
.....	يعكس	poet	.....
.....	يهتف	bubbles	.....

▶ **Read and write.**

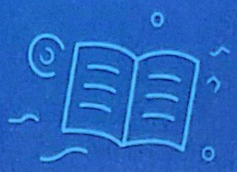
• **Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P.
.....	يرسل	sent	sent
wear	يرتدى	wore	.....
.....	يشعر	felt	felt
hear	يسمع	.....	heard
.....	تشرق	shone	shone
understand	يفهم	understood	.....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 5&6

- Language
- Literature Corner



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

talented	موهوب	award	جائزة
portrait	صورة شخصية [مرسومة]	artist	فنان
cello	تشيلو [كمنجة كبيرة]	regret	يندم / ندم
handsome	وسيم	stage	خشبة المسرح
perform	يؤدى	cruel / unkind	قاسٍ

• Extra vocabulary

musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	string	وتر [الآلات الموسيقية]
poem	قصيدة	secret	سر
selfish	أنانى	discover	يكتشف
locked room	غرفة مغلقة	ugly	قبيح
frightening	مخيف	forever	إلى الأبد
warn	يحذر	wish	امنية
youth	فترة الشباب	truth	الحقيقة
believe	يصدق	realize	يدرك

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
know	يعرف	knew	known
forget	ينسي	forgot	forgotten
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden
keep	يحتفظ	kept	kept

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

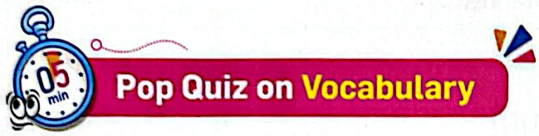
Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
stage	the part of a theater where actors act
award	a prize

Scanned with CamScanner

musician	a person whose job is playing music
talented	with a special ability to do something well
cello	a kind of musical instrument with strings
perform	show your acting or musical skills to other people
portrait	a painting or picture of a person
artist	someone who creates paintings or drawings
beauty	the quality of being attractive
selfish	caring only about yourself
regretted	felt sorry about something you did
secret	something you do not want other people to know
cruel	unkind and causing pain to others

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for over an hour	لأكثر من ساعة	look very confident	يبدو واثق جدًا
come true	يتحقق	stay young forever	يبقى شابًا للأبد
change back into	يعود إلى	at the same moment	في اللحظة نفسها
make a choice	يتخذ قرارًا	afraid of	خائف من
over time	مع مرور الوقت	growing old	التقدم فى العمر
on stage	على خشبة مسرح		





▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The artist painted a beautiful ..... of the king.
   a. portrait b. beauty c. concert d. secret
2. Ali is ..... . He never shares his toys with others.
   a. friendly b. selfish c. kind d. honest
3. Many tourists come to enjoy the ..... of the mountains.
   a. beauty b. worry c. fear d. action
4. The ..... looks like a big violin. It's a beautiful instrument.
   a. cello b. drum c. piano d. triangle
5. A ..... person has a special ability to do something well.
   a. busy b. worried c. talented d. nervous
6. A ..... is the part of a theater where actors act.
   a. kitchen b. class c. playground d. stage

[التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر - القاهرة / مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٥]

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The Picture of Dorian Gray	handsome - art	Dorian Gray was a handsome young man who loved art.
	paint - portrait	His friend Basil painted his portrait.
	growing old	Dorian became afraid of growing old and wished he could stay young forever.
	selfish	Over time, Dorian changed and became selfish, cold and cruel.
	locked - room	Dorian became afraid and hid the portrait in a locked room.
	regret	In the end, Dorian regretted his actions but it was too late.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص
الاستماع

Interviewer : Wow, Mazen! The **concert**[1] was amazing! You're so **talented**[2]!

Mazen : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a concert!

Interviewer: I'm not surprised. You played the guitar and sang for over an hour!

Mazen : It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem I had before the concert!

Interviewer: A problem - what was that ?

Mazen : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where. I looked **everywhere**[3], even under all the chairs, but I couldn't find it! Five minutes before the concert, my friend came into the room. She saw it behind the door. I was very **lucky**[4]!

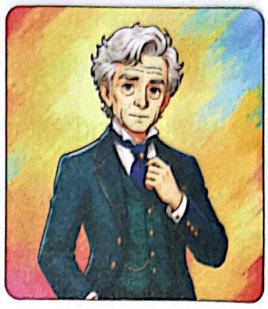
[1] حفلة موسيقية
[2] موهوب
[3] فى كل مكان
[4] محظوظ

Scanned with CamScanner

The Picture of Dorian Gray
by Oscar Wilde

The Beginning





Many years ago, a handsome young man named Dorian Gray lived in England. He was kind, and friendly, and he loved art.

One day, his friend Basil Hallward, a talented **artist**[1], painted his **portrait**[2]. While Basil was painting him, their friend Henry Wotton told Dorian that "youth and **beauty** [3] were the only important things in life". Basil warned Dorian not to believe Henry, but Dorian did not listen to Basil. Dorian became afraid of growing old and losing his beauty. When the portrait was finished, Dorian looked at it and said, "My portrait can get old, but I wish I could stay young forever."

[1] فنان
[2] لوحة لصورة شخصية
[3] جمال
[4] ندم

The middle

Over time, Dorian changed. He became selfish, cold, and cruel. One day, he noticed that the face in the portrait looked unkind, although his own face was still young and handsome. He realized that his wish had come true: he did not change, but his portrait changed a little whenever he did something bad or wrong.

Dorian became afraid that others would discover his secret. He hid the portrait in a locked room and said, "No one will ever look at this painting."

Years passed, and although Dorian did more bad things, he never grew older. Meanwhile, his face in the portrait became old, ugly, and frightening, showing the truth about his life.

The End

In the end, Dorian **regretted**[4] his actions and decided to become good again. He hoped the portrait would return to normal, but it was too late. The ugly portrait showed the poor choices, that he had made in his life.

When Dorian died, his body became old and ugly. At the same moment, the portrait changed back into the image of the young, handsome man that Basil had painted.

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language

Prepositional phrases شِبْـه الجملة

- A prepositional phrase is a group of words beginning with a preposition, and ending with a noun or pronoun, that the preposition refers to, and sometimes an adjective. It doesn't contain a verb.

- شِبْه الجملة هى عبارة عن مجموعة من الكلمات التى تبدأ بحرف جر وتنتهي باسم أو ضمير الذى يشير إليها حرف الجر، وأحيانًا تحتوى على صفة ولا تحتوى على فعل :

- Prepositions can include :

after	بعد	behind	خلف	in	فى	under	تحت	with	مع
before	قبل	for	لـ / لمدة	into	داخل	through	خلال	on	على

▸ **e.g** : I'm always tired after a concert.

preposition — noun — A prepositional phrase

She looked very confident at the concert.

preposition — noun — A prepositional phrase

Nadine never puts her cello behind the door.

preposition — noun — A prepositional phrase

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I study well ..... the exam.
   a. before b. after c. next d. under
2. Whom does he eat dinner ..... ?
   a. for b. with c. on d. in
3. Sami always puts his guitar ..... the door. *(Giza - Warraq 2025)*
   a. on b. behind c. in d. under
4. I looked ..... my bed, but I couldn't find anything.
   a. under b. before c. off d. of

(Alexandria - Montaza 2025)

5. ..... going home, go to the supermarket.
   a. Under b. In c. Before d. Behind

(Cairo - Helwan 2025)

6. Noha loves performing ..... stage. *(Giza – English Inspection 2025)*
   a. into b. on c. in d. of
7. My uncle works ..... Alexandria.
   a. on b. in c. of d. behind

Scanned with CamScanner

8. What do you usually do ..... school ?
a. on b. after c. about d. of

9. She often gets nervous ..... a concert. *(Giza – Manshiyet Al-Qanater 2026)*
a. to b. on c. before d. above

10. He ran because he was late ..... the concert. *(Menoufia - Menouf 2026)*
a. on b. for c. under d. behind

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. I help mom wash up the dishes ..... [in] dinner.
2. Actors love performing ..... [of] stage.
3. ..... [On] her poem, she talks about nature.
4. He has stayed at the hotel ..... [on] two days.
5. Students often get nervous ..... [after] the exam.
6. We walked quietly ..... [on] the library.

IV Writing

▸ When you write a story, remember these important elements :

عندما تكتب قصة ، تذكر هذه العناصر المهمة .

- **Characters** - Who is in your story ? [main character and others]
  - الشخصيات - من يتواجد فى قصتك ؟ [الشخصية الرئيسية والأخرون].
- **Setting** - Where and when does the story happen ?
  - المكان والزمان [الإطار] - أين ومتى تحدث القصة ؟
- **Plot** - What happens in the story ? [add a beginning, middle, and end]
  - الحبكة - ماذا يحدث فى القصة ؟ [أضف بداية ومنتصف ونهاية] .
- **Conflict** - What problem or challenge do the characters face ?
  - الصراع [المشكلة] - ماهى المشكلة أو التحدى الذى يواجه الشخصيات ؟
- **Resolution** - How is the problem solved ?
  - الحل - كيف تم حل المشكلة ؟
- **Message** - What lesson does the story teach us ?
  - الرسالة [العبرة] - ما الدرس الذى تعلمنا إياه القصة ؟

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 3 On Lessons 5 & 6



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who painted Dorian Gray ?

.....

2. What did Dorian want ?

.....

3. When did the portrait change ?

.....

4. Where did Dorian hide the painting ?

.....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

guitar – concert – problem – award – talented

Interviewer : Wow, Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so [1] ..... !

Mazen : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a [2] ..... !

Interviewer : I'm not surprised. You played the [3] ..... and sang for over an hour!

Mazen : It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem I had before the concert!

Interviewer : A [4] ..... - what was that ?

Mazen : I couldn't find my guitar! I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Many years ago, a handsome young man named Dorian Gray lived in England. He was kind and friendly, and he loved art. His friend Basil Hallward, a talented artist, painted his portrait one day. Herry Wotton told Dorian that youth and beauty were the only important things in life. Dorian became afraid of growing old and losing his beauty, so he wished he could stay young forever. Over time, Dorian changed and became selfish and **cruel**. He noticed that the face in the portrait looked unkind, realizing his wish had come true. The portrait changed whenever he did something bad, but his own face was still young and handsome.

Scanned with CamScanner

In the end, Dorian regretted his actions and decided to become good again. When Dorian died, his body became old and ugly, and at the same moment, the portrait changed back into the image of the young, handsome man.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**cruel**" means ..... .
   a. kind b. friendly c. unkind d. unhappy
2. Basil Hallward was a talented ..... .
   a. artist b. photographer c. pilot d. engineer

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Henry Wotton tell Dorian ?
   .....
4. What happened to the portrait when Dorian died ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. He played the piano ..... one hour. *(Damietta - New Damietta 2026)*
   a. for b. on c. behind d. into
2. Mazen went to the beach ..... a sunny day.
   a. at b. on c. in d. of

(Beheira - Edko 2026)

3. Who do you eat with ..... lunch time ?
   a. under b. at c. behind d. beside
4. I have a pencil case ..... my school bag.
   a. after b. for c. in d. at

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. tired – always – I'm – a concert – after. *(Ismailia - English Inspection 2025)*
   .....
2. young - wanted - stay - forever -to - Dorian.
   .....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A school concert"

Guiding elements:

• concert • perform • guitar • musicians • on stage

.....

.....

.....

(Sharkia – East Zagazig 2024)

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 7&8

- Writing a report
- Story : Behind the camera



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

lump	كتلة	clay	صلصال
pottery wheel	عجلة فخارية	advertisement	إعلان
apron	مريلة	kiln	فرن [للخزف]
decorate	يزين	play	يعزف / مسرحية
choir	كورال	exhibition	معرض
edit	يعدل	costumes	ازياء خاصة

• Extra vocabulary

bowl	سلطانية	photographer	مصور
photography	تصوير	cupboard	خزانة
website	موقع الكتروني	craft	حرفة يدوية
acting	تمثيل	props	أدوات الديكور

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
choose يختار	chose	chosen
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

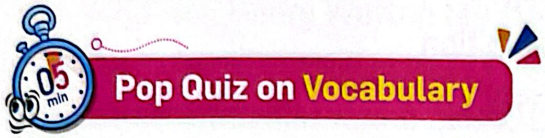
Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
lump	a solid object without a clear shape
wheel	a round flat circle which turns around
kiln	a very hot oven for making pottery hard and strong
clay	a natural material you can use to make pots, vases, or sculptures
apron	you wear this to keep your clothes clean
choir	a group of people who sing together
edit	to change photos to make them better
a play	a story that you watch at the theater

Scanned with CamScanner

advertisement	this tells people about an event, so they want to see it
photography	the activity or job of taking photographs
exhibition	a group of artwork in one place for people to see
costumes	special clothes that people wear at festivals or on stage

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

put on	يرتدى	take .. out	يخرج
wait for	ينتظر	all over it	حوله بالكامل
walk around	يتجول حول	work on a project	يقوم باداء مشروع
cut up pieces of	يقطع قطعاً من		





▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A ..... is a very hot oven for making pottery hard and strong.
   a. kiln b. freezer c. fridge d. lump

[التقييمات الشهرية / اكتوبر / المنيا ٢٠٢٥]

2. ..... is the activity or job of taking photographs.
   a. Drawing b. Driving c. Photography d. Singing
3. A/An ..... is a group of artwork in one place for people to see.
   a. photo b. exhibition c. image d. chance
4. A story that you watch at the theater is called a/an ..... .
   a. play b. instrument c. photo d. stage

[التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٦]

5. A group of people who sing together is called ..... .
   a. team b. choir c. family d. party

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My pottery project	lump	We started our pottery project with a lump of clay.
	pottery wheel	The teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel.
	apron	We put on aprons over our clothes.
	kiln	The teacher put the bowl in a kiln.
	decorate	I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

Scanned with CamScanner

The school show		
	school show	Everybody was excited about the school show except Magdy.
	piano	Waleed is going to play the piano.
	choir - songs	The choir is going to sing beautiful songs.
	costumes	Dalia is going to make costumes for the choir.
	singing - acting	Magdy doesn't like singing or acting and he can't play an instrument.
	photographs - perform	Magdy can take photographs while the class are performing.

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص
الاستماع

My pottery project by Amal

1



My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.

2



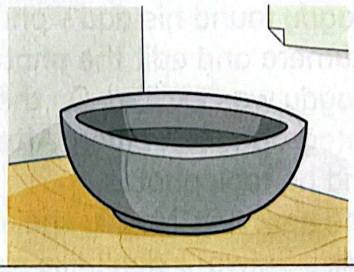
First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then, it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.

3



When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

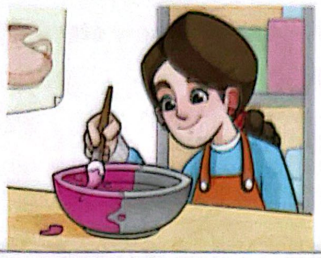
4



Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

Scanned with CamScanner

5



I painted it pink all over first, and waited for the paint to dry. Then I used different colors of paint to make circles all over it.

6



I really enjoyed making my bowl! When I finished my bowl, I gave it to my mom for her birthday. She loved it!

Behind the camera

Everybody was excited about the school show, except Magdy.

"I'm going to play the piano," said Waleed.

"The choir is going to sing beautiful songs," said Nesma.

"And I'm going to make **costumes**[1] for the choir," said Dalia.

"I've written a funny play!" said Samir.

Magdy was worried. "I can't **play**[2] an instrument or sing. What am I going to do?" he thought.



On the way home, Magdy saw an **advertisement**[3] for a photography **exhibition**[4] at the museum. A black and white photo showed a man playing the piano on stage.

"That's amazing," thought Magdy.

At home, Magdy started looking in cupboards.

"What are you doing?» asked Mom.

"Dad has a good camera, doesn't he?"

"Yes," said Mom, "It's in this box. He hasn't used it for a long time."

Magdy found his dad's photography books. Then he learned how to use the camera and edit the photos on the computer.

Magdy was excited. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography exhibition. After the exhibition, they walked around the city and he took photos.

The next day, Magdy spoke to his teacher.

"Miss Salwa, I don't like singing or acting, and I can't play an instrument, but I could be the photographer! I can take photographs while the class are performing. Then I can **edit**[5] the photos for our school website," said Magdy.

Miss Salwa smiled, "That's a great idea, Magdy!"

Magdy took lots of photos during the show.

The next week, Magdy's photos were on the school website.

"You're going to be a great photographer," said his dad.

[1] ازياء خاصة
[2] يعزف
[3] اعلان
[4] معرض
[5] يُعدل

Scanned with CamScanner

Who does Samir help in the school show? AB





It was the day after the school show. Magdy's friend Samir was visiting his grandma.

"Hi, Grandma. I've come to visit you," said Samir.

"Hello, Samir," said Grandma. "How was the school show ? Were you in a play ?" "It was great, Grandma, but I wasn't in a play. Magdy and I don't like acting. Magdy was the photographer for the school show, but my job was better than that.
I helped Mr Ibrahim make the props," said Samir excitedly.

"What are props ?" asked Grandma.

"Props are the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real," said Samir. "If the play is about a family at home in the living room, you need some furniture - like a couch, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall. Sometimes we get the things we need from parents. But sometimes we make them!"

"You make them?" said Grandma, looking surprised.

"Yes, I love making things, Grandma. We use wood, cardboard, colored paper.. anything ! My teacher Mr Ibrahim is very good at making things and he shows me what to do," explained Samir.

"That sounds exciting, Samir. I'd like to see some of the things you made," said Grandma.

"That's easy," said Samir. "Magdy put his photos on the school website. I'll get my phone and I'll show you!"

III Writing Skill

Writing a report

Tip to write a report :

- Use sequencing words to order your ideas: First, Next, Then, and Finally.
  استخدم كلمات التتابع لترتيب أفكارك : أولًا، التالى، ثم وفى النهاية.
- We can use "when" to talk about the order in which things happen. Both parts of the sentence are in the same tense.
  يمكننا أن نستخدم "When" للحديث عن الترتيب الذى تحدث به الأشياء. كلا الجزئين من الجملة فى نفس الزمن.
- e.g : When my bowl was finished, my teacher put it in a kiln.
- Draw pictures to illustrate each stage of the report.
  ارسم صور لتوضيح كل مرحلة في التقرير.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 4 On Lessons 7 & 8



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Amira's class work on this week ?

.....

2. What did Amira want to make ?

.....

3. Who showed Amira how to use a pottery wheel ?

.....

4. Who did Amira give her bowl to ?

.....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

balloons - drew - glue - hoopoe - cutting

We did a craft project at school. We made Egyptian birds. First, we made [1] ..... with flour and water. Then, we blew up small [2] ..... and covered them with paper and glue. The next day, we painted the birds and [3] ..... the patterns. I used brown, black, and white because these are the colors of the [4] ....., which is my favorite bird. Then, we added wings and tails and put the birds on a long piece of wood. They looked amazing.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Maged was worried about the school show because he could not sing, act, or play a musical instrument. One day, he saw an advertisement for a photography exhibition and became interested in photography. At home, he found his father's **old** camera and learned how to use it. He also learned how to edit photos on the computer. After visiting a photography exhibition, Maged practiced taking pictures around the city. Then he asked his teacher if he could be the photographer for the school show. His teacher liked his idea. Maged took many photos and they were later posted on the school website.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. After the school show, Maged's photos were posted on .....

a. a newspaper
b. the school website
c. a magazine
d. a museum wall

Scanned with CamScanner

2. The opposite of the underlined word "**old**" is ..... .

a. cold b. good c. messy d. new

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why was Maged worried about the school show ?

.....

4. What did Maged do after visiting a photography exhibition ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. If you are tired, ... to bed early. *(Cairo - El Nozha 2026)*

a. going b. went c. goes d. go

2. If it ....., the ground gets wet. *(Kafr Al-Sheikh - Beyala 2026)*

a. raining b. rains c. to rain d. rain

3. We put the pieces of paper ..... the glue.

a. after b. before c. under d. into

4. My grandparents arrived ..... lunch.

a. under b. behind c. after d. on

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. wear – to keep – aprons – We – clean – our clothes.

.....

2. you – Did – the – enjoy – show – school?

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"The school show"

Guiding elements:

• photographer • stage • the play • props • photos

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner



Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSONS 5&6

.....	جائزة	talented	.....
.....	يندم	cello	.....
.....	فنان	handsome	.....
.....	خشبة المسرح	cruel	.....
.....	آلة موسيقية	portrait	.....
.....	سر	perform	.....

LESSONS 7&8

.....	يزين	lump	.....
.....	كورال	apron	.....
.....	يعدل	clay	.....
.....	مسرحية	advertisement	.....
.....	فرن [للخزف]	exhibition	.....
.....	عجلة فخارية	costumes	.....

▸ Read and write.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P.
.....	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
know	يعرف	knew	.....
.....	يحتفظ	kept	kept
hide	يختبئ	.....	hidden
.....	يختار	chose	chosen
speak	يتحدث	spoke	.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

1 Learn

تعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Kapoor. It is made of 73 metal balls. The metal is very **shiny**, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye sculpture, you can see your own face many times. The balls look like bubbles which are floating! Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math and how materials work. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time. He used metal because it is a **strong** material.

شرح الحل

تقرأ الفقرة جيداً لتحديد معانى الكلمات المستوفة

- shiny [لامع]
- strong [قوى]

1. The underlined word "**shiny**" in the text means "……" .
   a. gray b. pale c. bright d. lucky
2. The underlined word "**strong**" is the opposite of …… .
   a. weak b. big c. small d. sad

2 Master

اتقن طريقة حل السؤال [متبعًا الخطوة الأولى].

Read and answer the questions.

Sibelius was from Finland, a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still **popular** today and played at concerts and in theaters all around the world.

The sculpture was **created** by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide. Hiltunen wanted the sculpture to look like the way Sibelius's music sounds. You can see this sculpture in the Sibelius Park, in Helsinki, the capital city of Finland.

1. The underlined word "**popular**" means "……" .
   a. famous b. regular
   c. irregular d. bad
2. The underlined word "**created**" means "……".
   a. damaged b. invited
   c. made d. decorated

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Writing



يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Creative activities	**Write the meaning :** ..... تعبر عن ..... صلصال ..... ملصق فنى ..... يدخر المال ..... تمثال منحوت ..... مبدع	**Complete the sentences :** 1. There are many ways to ..... yourself. 2. Use ..... to make a bowl if you like pottery. 3. Use recycled cloth to ..... and help the planet . 4. You can make a beautiful ..... with paint and colored paper. 5. You could use wood or stone to make a	**Write a paragraph using the sentences :** "Creative activities" ....
A Pottery project	..... مريلة ..... كتلة ..... مشروع ..... فرن [للخزف] ..... عجلة فخارية ..... يزين	1. My class worked on a pottery ..... this week. 2. We started with a ..... of clay. 3. Our teacher showed us how to use a ..... . It goes so fast. 4. We put on ..... over our clothes. 5. We put our pottery bowls in a ..... to make them hard. 6. We used special paint to ..... them.	**Write a report using the sentences :** "A pottery project" ....

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Review, Practice & Master
for Correction Notes



الهدف من هذا الجزء

- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ.

Review راجع القاعدة وتأكد من فهمك

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

If / When + present simple, ... present simple/can/can't + inf.

If / When + present simple , imperative

2 Prepositional phrases شبه الجملة

after بعد	behind خلف	in فى	under تحت	with مع
before قبل	for لـ / لمدة	into داخل	through خلال	on على

Practice تدرب على كيفية التعامل مع السؤال

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 If I ..... [does] something creative, I feel happy.	do	فى الحالة الصفرية نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط
2 I am always tired ..... [before] playing football.	after	نستخدم [after] لأن الجملة تحتاج عبارة توضح أن الحدث تم حدوثه بعد شىء آخر.
3 If you feel sick, ... [sees] a doctor.	see	نستخدم مصدر الفعل فى جملة جواب الشرط عند إعطاء تعليمات.

Master أتقن طريقة حل السؤال

Write the reason. معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

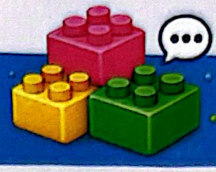
1 You can't ..... [arrives] early if you take the bus.	arrive	.....
2 My father ..... [get] angry when I arrive home late.	gets	.....
3 If you heat butter, it ..... [melting].	melts	.....
4 I am always a bit nervous ..... [under] stage.	on	.....

Write the correction. اكتب التصحيح.

1 She put the keys ..... [for] her bag.	.....	نستخدم حرف الجر المناسب الذى يوضح مكان المفاتيح
2 If you ..... [studied] hard, you get good marks.	.....	نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط فى الحالة الصفرية.
3 If you have a problem, ... [asked] your teacher.	.....	نستخدم مصدر الفعل فى جمل جواب الشرط عند إعطاء تعليمات

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1. activity – My favorite – painting – is.

2. sculptor – a – Anish – is – Kapoor.

3. like – shells – I – collecting.

4. kiln - in - a - The - put - bowl - the - teacher.

	١ فاعل	٢ فعل	٣ باقي الجملة.
1.			
2.		is	
3.			collecting shells
4.	The teacher		

1 Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Anish Kapoor
   فاعل الجملة الثانية
2. I
   فاعل الجملة الثالثة



الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

2 Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. is
   فعل الجملة الأولى
2. put
   فعل الجملة الرابعة



الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

1. can - to make – What – collage – use – you – a ?

2. heard – Have – about – the – you – competition ?

3. art – Where – he – did – study ?

4. did - learn about – How – Magdy – photography ?

	١ كلمة استفهام	٢ فعل مساعد	٣ فاعل	٤ فعل	٥ باقي السؤال ؟
1.		can			
2.					
3.	Where				
4.			Magdy		

3 Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Can / Did

تستخدم مع:

I / we / you / they / he / she / it

Have

تستخدم مع:

I, we, they, you



الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

4 The wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- What [ما/ماذا]: للسؤال عن الشيء.
- Where [أين]: للسؤال عن المكان.



أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٥ جملة).

1 Creative Activities

There are many creative activities[1]. You can try junk modeling and use things from the house[2]. You can also try pottery and use clay to make a bowl, a cup or a vase[3]. You can make a collage with paint and colored paper[4]. You can make jewelry with glass or plastic beads[5]. You can also use your computer skills to make animation[6]. These activities help you express yourself[7].

2 A school show

Yesterday, it was the school show[8]. It was great[9]. I was in a play because I like acting[10]. Tamer was the photographer for the school show[11]. When each person was on stage, Tamer took photos[12]. The play was about a family at home in the living room[13]. We needed some furniture like a sofa, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall[14]. My teacher Mr Ali is very good at making things[15]. He showed us how to make these things[16].

3 A famous sculptor

From	omar@gmail.com
To	ali@gmail.com
Subject	a famous sculptor

Dear Ali,

How are things[17]? I'd like to tell you about a famous sculptor[18]. Anish Kapoor is a sculptor [19]. He was born in India[20]. He moved to London to study art[21]. He likes to use new shapes and materials[22]. He understands math and how materials work[23]. He can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time[24]. He uses metal because bad weather doesn't damage it[25].

Yours,

Omar

From Sentences to Topics



- Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.

Scanned with CamScanner



Review through the Exam on Unit 1

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات

25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان].

sculpture	تمثال	activity	نشاط	talented	موهوب
messy	فوضوى	materials	مواد خام	stage	خشبة المسرح
sculptor	نحات	recycled	معاد تدويره	handsome	وسيم
beads	حبات الخرز	fireworks	ألعاب نارية	kiln	فرن [للخزف]
design	يصمم	poet	شاعر	portrait	صورة مرسومة
lid	غطاء زجاجة	sight	منظر طبيعى	reflect	يعكس
lump	كتلة	advertisement	إعلان	pottery wheel	عجلة فخارية
apron	مريلة	exhibition	معرض		
clay	صلصال	costumes	أزياء تنكرية		

10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. My favorite activity[1] is making pottery.
2. When something is messy[2], it's not clean or tidy.
3. When the mirror shows your image, it reflects[3] it.
4. A sculptor[4] is the person who makes sculptures.
5. A stage[5] is the part of a theater where actors act.
6. Dorian was a handsome[6] young man.
7. A kiln[7] is a very hot oven for making pottery.
8. The teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel[8].
9. If you design clothes, you can save money by using recycled[9] cloth.
10. Cloud Gate is a very popular sight[10] to visit.

[1] البحيرة - دمنهور	[2] كتاب الطالب	[3] القاهرة - الشروق	[4] الجيزة - الدقى	[5] القاهرة - مصر الجديدة
[6] كتاب الطالب	[7] المنيا - المنيا	[8] كتاب التدريبات	[9] كتاب الطالب	[10] كتاب الطالب

Scanned with CamScanner

Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
(التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان)

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

▸ **Formation :**

Statement الجملة الخبرية → If إذا / When عندما + present simple, ... present simple/can + inf.

ex. - If you mix blue and red, you get purple.

If / When مضارع بسيط , imperative صيغة الامر .

---

2 Prepositional phrase شبه الجملة

• Prepositions can include :

after	بعد	behind	خلف	in	فى	under	تحت	with	مع
before	قبل	for	لـ / لمدة	into	داخل	through	خلال	on	على

Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. When she listens carefully to the teacher, she understands.
2. If I put food in the fridge, it becomes cold.
3. If I am tired, I go to bed early.
4. If you want to get up early, you can set an alarm.
5. When the sun rises, the plants make their food.
6. If you study hard, you get high grades.
7. Noha loves performing on stage.
8. Before going home, go to the supermarket.
9. I looked under my bed, but I couldn't find anything.
10. I help my mom wash up the dishes after dinner.

[1] الإسماعيلية - التل الكبير	[2] الإسكندرية - الجمرك	[3] الجيزة - كرداسة	[4] المنيا - مغاغة	[5] الإسكندرية - المنتزه
[6] الجيزة - جنوب الجيزة	[7] الجيزة - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية	[8] القاهرة - حلوان	[9] كتاب التدريبات	[10] المنيا - بنى مزار

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 5 On Unit 1



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

إختبار المعاصر

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is Maged's favorite hobby ?

.....

2. Who helped Maged learn this hobby ?

.....

3. What does the teacher ask Maged to do for the play ?

.....

4. Why does Maged prefer using recycled cloth ?

.....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

poem – sculpture – interesting – wood – competition

Ehab : Did you hear about the art [1] ..... in our school?
Kareem : Yes. That sounds [2] ..... !
Ehab : What are you going to make for the competition ?
Kareem : I want to make a [3] ..... .
Ehab : What material are you going to use ?
Kareem : I am going to use [4] ..... or clay.
Ehab : That sounds great.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.

First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got **messy**. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is generally about " ..... ".
   a. Making clothes b. A pottery project c. A trip to a place d. Special paints
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**messy**" is " ..... ".
   a. lucky b. hot c. wet d. clean

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did the writer want to make ?

.....

4. How did they keep their clothes clean on the pottery project?

.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser's grandma was waiting for him at the school gate. [.....]
2. Asser and Mayar had a hard time at grandma's house. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who is Mrs Azza ?

.....

2. What do grandma and children bake ?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If we finish our homework, we can ..... TV.
   a. watches b. watch c. watched d. watching
2. We all cheered when the actors appeared ..... the stage.
   a. for b. under c. on d. before
3. What do you do ..... a sunny day ?
   a. on b. into c. under d. through
4. You can't ..... the play if you forget the tickets.
   a. watching b. watch c. to watch d. watches

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a collage – use – you – to make – What – can ?

.....

2. strings – a musical – The cello – instrument – is – with.

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

A pottery project

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- kiln
- clay
- decorate
- aprons

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 6 On Unit 1



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

إختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والإختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When was the school show ?

.....

2. How many students were in the choir ?

.....

3. How was the play at the school show ?

.....

4. What did they do at the last part of the show ?

.....

(Cairo - East Nasr City 2025)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

website – cinema – photos – exhibition – taking

Saleem is a creative photographer. He is good at [1] ..... photographs. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography [2] ..... . After the exhibition, they went into the city and Saleem took [3] ..... of things he saw. He shared his photos on the school [4] ..... and his friends liked them very much.

(Giza – English Inspection 2025)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954. He moved to London to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes and materials. Kapoor is a good artist. He understands math and how materials work. This means that he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time. Kapoor uses metal because it is a strong material. It is very good for outdoor sculptures because bad weather doesn't damage it. Cloud Gate is a famous sculpture made by Kapoor. Cloud Gate is very high. People can walk under it. It is a very popular sight to visit in Chicago.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Kapoor studied art in ..... .
   a. Spain b. India c. London d. USA
2. The text is generally about" ..... ".
   a. popular sights b. computer animation
   c. metals d. a great sculptor

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where is Anish Kapoor from?

.....

4. Why is metal very good for outdoor sculptures ?

.....

(Qalyoubia - Obour 2025)

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO. *(Sharkia - Hehia 2025)*

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher. [.....]
2. Asser has a new book with words in Braille. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser ? *(Cairo - Helwan 2025)*

.....

2. What did Asser do at the end of the school day ? *(Sharkia - West Zagazig 2024)*

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If Sara has a pottery class, she ..... her apron. *(Alexandria - English Inspection 2025)*

a. wearing b. wear c. wears d. wore

2. ..... you go to school, take your school bag. *(Sohag - Girga 2026)*

a. What b. Where c. Who d. When

3. I study well ..... the exam. *(Sharkia - Al-Husseiniyah 2026)*

a. before b. after c. next d. on

4. Jack walked ..... the forest. *(Port Said - East Port Said 2026)*

a. through b. out c. on d. for

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the choir – He – for – make – will – costumes. *(Fayoum – Senoures 2026)*

.....

2. creative – you – do – What – like – activities ? *(Giza - Warraq 2024)*

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Creative activities

Guiding elements:

- junk modeling
- pottery
- collage
- use
- skills
- paint

.....

.....

(Menofia – Sadat 2024/Giza – English Inspection 2025)

Scanned with CamScanner



تنويه
- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

UNIT 2

Home is where the heart is

المنزل هو المكان الذى تستريح به

Aims of Unit Two : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية :

In this unit I will ...

- understand and use words for free-time activities.
- understand and use the first conditional.
- listen and understand people explaining their opinions.
- read and understand a science-fiction story.
- understand and use phrasal verbs.
- write an instructional guide.
- use definitions to explain new words.
- read and understand a mystery story.

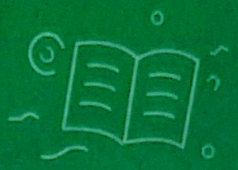
في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- أفهم وأستخدم كلمات لأنشطة وقت الفراغ.
- أفهم وأستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى.
- أستمع وأفهم شرح الأشخاص لآرائهم.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة خيال علمى.
- أفهم وأستخدم الأفعال الاصطلاحية.
- أكتب دليل إرشادى.
- أستخدم تعريفات لشرح الكلمات الجديدة.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة غامضة.

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 1&2

- My new room
- Language



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

cartoons	رسوم متحركة	chess	لعبة الشطرنج
sporty	رياضى	push-up	تمارين الضغط
comic books	كتب مصورة مضحكة	apartment	شقة سكنية
vaccine	لِقَاح	games console	وحدة التحكم فى الألعاب الإلكترونية
swap	يتبادل	hairdryer	مُجَفف الشعر
appliance	آلة - جهاز	toaster	محمصة خبز كهربائية
blade	شَفْرة	refrigerator	ثلاجة
motor	مُحَرِّك - موتور	blender	خلاط
invention	اختراع	violin	آلة الكمان

• Extra vocabulary

illness	مرض	blend	يَمْزِجُ - يخلط	juicer	مِعْصَرة [أداة للعصر]
hobbies	هوايات	medicine	طِبّ - دواء	organize	ينظم
PCs	أجهزة الحاسوب الشخصى	scientist	عالِم	save	ينقذ / يوفر
Polish	بولندى [الجنسية]	decorations	زينة	chop	يقطع - يفرم
invent	يخترع	mixer	خلاط	comfortable	مريح
sharp	حاد	toast	خبز محمص	light	مضيئ/ منير
board games	العاب لوحية	kettle	غَلاَّية	smoothie	مشروب فواكه

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
win يفوز	won	won
spend يقضى - ينفق	spent	spent
bring يحضر	brought	brought
hide يختبئ	hid	hidden

• Did you know ?

• Egyptian families are getting smaller! Today, an average family has three or four people in one family home. In 2000, it was seven!

• يقل عدد أفراد العائلات المصرية ! حيث يتوسط عدد افراد العائلة اليوم ثلاثة أو اربعة اشخاص فى منزل العائلة، فى حيث أنه كان سبعة أشخاص فى عام ٢٠٠٠!

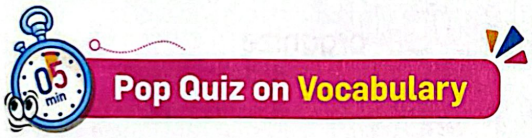
Scanned with CamScanner

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
milkshake	- a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla - a drink that is often made with milk and ice cream
motor	a part of a machine that makes something move
invention	something that someone has made for the first time
appliance	an object that is useful
vaccine	a type of medicine that stops you getting ill
blade	something sharp that cuts

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do push-ups	يقوم بتمارين الضغط	for the first time	لأول مرة
share with	يشارك مع	protect ... from	يحمى ... من
change over the years	تتغير على مر السنين	save millions of lives	
in the bottom of	فى الجزء السفلى من		ينقذ حياة ملايين الأشخاص
get stronger	يزداد قوة		





▸ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Refrigerators, blenders and toasters are ..... that we use in the kitchen.
   a. games b. appliances c. festivals d. places

[التقييمات الشهرية / اكتوبر / القاهرة / الساحل]

2. I do ..... in my room because I want to get stronger.
   a. chess b. cartoons c. homework d. push-ups

[التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / الشرقية / الصالحية]

3. My bedroom is very big, so I ..... it with my brother.
   a. chat b. share c. spend d. finish

4. ..... is quite a difficult board game.
   a. Taekwondo b. Tennis c. Chess d. Volleyball

UNIT 2

• **Did you know ?**

• One of the first cartoons was made in the early 1900s in France. It features a simple stick person moving!

• واحد من اوائل افلام الرسوم المتحركة صنع فى اوائل القرن العشرين فى فرنسا. وكان يُعرض شخص علي شكل عصاة بسيطة متحركة.

Scanned with CamScanner

5. Let's buy different stories and ..... them after we finish reading.
a. build b. play c. move d. swap

6. The sharp ..... in the bottom of the blender chops the food.
a. motor b. blade c. fork d. spoon

7. I usually watch ..... on TV. They are funny !
a. weather b. matches c. sports d. cartoons

8. ..... is my favorite drink. It's often chocolate or vanilla.
a. Orange juice b. Tea c. Milkshake d. Lemonade

9. A/An ..... is a part of a machine that makes something move.
a. blade b. motor c. appliance d. vaccine

10. ..... is a type of medicine that stops you getting ill.
a. Smoothie b. Vaccine c. Toaster d. Fever

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

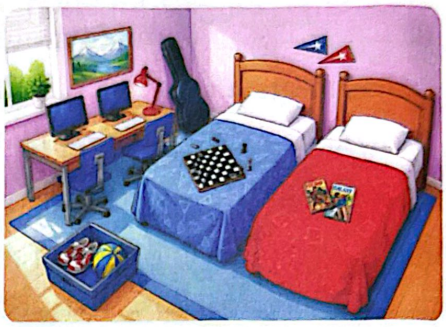
نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My fantastic bedroom	apartment	Harry's family moved into a new apartment a month ago.
	light	Harry's room is very light and comfortable.
	share - bedroom	Harry shares his bedroom with his brother, Kyle.
	desk - PCs	Harry and his brother have a long desk for their PCs.
	homework	They can do their homework in their bedroom.
	learn - violin	Harry is learning to play the violin.
	sporty	Harry's brother is sporty and he plays a lot of volleyball.
	chess club	Harry and his friend Austin are in the school chess club.
Amazing appliances	appliance	I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance.
	milkshake	I use a blender for making milkshake with my mom.
	blade - chop	When the blade turns, it chops the food.
	motor	The motor turns the blade.
	medicine	Blenders are useful in medicine.
	blenders - metal	There are blenders made of plastic, glass and metal.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

My fantastic bedroom by Harry



We moved into a new apartment in London a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom !

I love my new room because it's very light and **comfortable**[1] . I share it with my brother, Kyle.

We have a long desk for our **PCs**[2] where we do our homework. It's much better than doing it in the living room ! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV !

When we finish our homework, we can play computer games or watch cartoons with our friends.

I **swap**[3] comic books with my friends once a week and we talk about them. I like reading them in bed.

I'm learning to play the violin at the moment, and I practice a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother doesn't like it! He's very sporty and plays a lot of volleyball, so he does **push-ups**[4] in our room. He often does 30 in the evening !

Kyle and I have a lot of the same friends. Now that we've moved, they come to our house and we spend time in our room.

My friend Austin is an amazing chess player. We're both in the school chess club. Chess is quite difficult for me, but Austin is helping me.

Kyle and I like board games. We play them with our friends in our bedroom and with our family in the living room !

My favorite thing about our bedroom is that we have **space**[5] for our hobbies and for our friends.

[1] مريح
[2] أجهزة الحاسوب الشخصي
[3] يبدل
[4] تمارين الضغط
[5] مساحة - فراغ

Scanned with CamScanner

Amazing appliances

I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance ! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice !

I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too.



Karim

Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922 ? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.



blender

Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal.
Do you have a blender at home ? Do you use your blender a lot, or a little? What would you do without your blender in the kitchen?

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn 1. Dr Jonas used a blender to make a/an .....
a. invention b. milkshake c. vaccine d. soup

Practice 2. The blender is a kitchen .....
a. metal b. appliance c. board d. advice

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language

The first conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Usage : الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لنتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

Formation : التكوين

To form it, we use "if" plus the present simple and "will" plus the infinitive :

• لتكوين الحالة الشرطية الأولى نستخدم "if" يليها زمن المضارع البسيط ثم "will" ثم مصدر الفعل :

- We use "can" plus infinitive to express ability.

• نستخدم "can" ثم مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن القدرة.

- We use "may" plus infinitive when we aren't sure.

• نستخدم "may" ثم مصدر الفعل عندما نكون غير متأكدين.

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If إذا / لو + present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط , subject الفاعل + will ('ll) /can / may + will not (won't)/can't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

Subject الفاعل + will ('ll)/can / may + will not (won't) /can't + inf. مصدر الفعل + if إذا / لو + present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

• لاحظ وضع comma [,] قبل بداية الجملة الثانية فى حالة وجود (If) فى البداية.

ex. - If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.
- People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.
- If she hurries, she may catch the train; I'm not sure.
- Dad can take you to school if you ask him now.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I will ..... a new apartment if I have a good job.

(Kafr El-Sheikh - English Supervision 2025)

a. buy b. bought c. buys d. to buy

2. Mazen ..... to your party if you don't invite him. *(Minia - Mallawi 2025)*

a. didn't come b. can't come c. don't come d. isn't coming

3. If I have enough money, I ..... buy a new bike.

a. was b. will c. would d. am

Scanned with CamScanner

4. If she ..... late, we won't go to the cinema.
a. comes b. come c. will come d. came

5. They ..... go to the club if they don't finish homework.
a. didn't b. won't c. haven't d. aren't

6. If you send the letter now, she ..... it tomorrow.
a. receive b. can receive c. is receiving d. received

7. If you ..... me, I can finish in time.
a. helped b. helps c. help d. helping

8. If you put food in the refrigerator, it will ..... fresh.
a. staying b. to stay c. stayed d. stay

9. If I see Ahmed, I can ..... him to call you.
a. asked b. asks c. asking d. ask

10. If he ..... hard, he will pass the exams.
a. studied b. study c. studies d. studying

11. If we ..... out tonight, we may go to the cinema.
a. going b. go c. went d. goes

12. If you practice every day, you ..... play the violin well.
a. will b. would c. could d. did

13. If they arrive late, their teacher will ..... angry.
a. is b. be c. are d. was

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. If she ..... (want) to make juice, she will use the blender.
(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / الشرقية - مشتول السوق)

2. If I wake up late, I'll ..... (missed) the bus.
(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / المنيا / مطاى)

3. If he ..... (not study) harder, he won't pass the exam.

4. If I find your ring, I ..... (could give) it back to you.

5. If we don't finish the project, our teacher ..... (not be) proud of us.

6. He will ..... (cancels) the party if he is sick.

7. I will buy you chocolate cake if you ..... (passed) your exam.

8. If they don't ..... (won) the match, they will be sad.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 7 On Lessons 1 & 2



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Stephen Poplawski invent ?
.....
2. What did he put in a tall glass ?
.....
3. What does the blade chop when it turns ?
.....
4. What size was the motor he added ?
.....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

share – happy – light – bed – desk

We moved into a new apartment a month ago. I'm so happy because I have a new [1] .....! I love my new room. It's very [2] ..... and comfortable. I [3] ..... it with my brother. We have a long [4] ..... for our PCs where we do our homework . It is much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV!

(Aswan - Kom Ombo 2025)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It's Grandma's birthday next week and we're organizing a special party for her. If we don't tell her, it'll be a big surprise. Uncle Amir and his family are arriving on Friday. If they bring lots of presents, we'll hide them in my room. Mom is going to cook lots of special food. If the weather is not too hot, we'll all eat outside. I'm helping my sister to make a cake. We're going to use Mom's new food mixer. Dad is buying special decorations for the house. It will look really **pretty** when we put lots of lights around the house. Everyone will come to our house an hour before lunch. Then Dad will drive to Grandma's house to collect her. It's going to be great !

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea in the text is about " ..... ".
   a. Family's house b. Special food
   c. Grandma's birthday d. Hot weather

2. The underlined word "**pretty**" means ..... .
   a. strong b. beautiful
   c. poor d. messy

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why are they organizing a special party ?

.....

4. When are Uncle Amir and his family arriving ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If I ..... late for school, I will take a taxi. *(Beheira - Abou El Matameer 2025)*

   a. am b. was c. had d. will be

2. If it is hot tomorrow, I can ..... a smoothie.

   a. making b. made c. make d. to make

3. People ..... get sick if they have the vaccine.

   a. doesn't b. won't c. didn't d. wasn't

4. They ..... plant red flowers if they have space. I'm not sure.

   a. has b. may c. do d. are

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. comic – We – books – swap – together.

.....

2. at – have – Do – a refrigerator – home – you ?

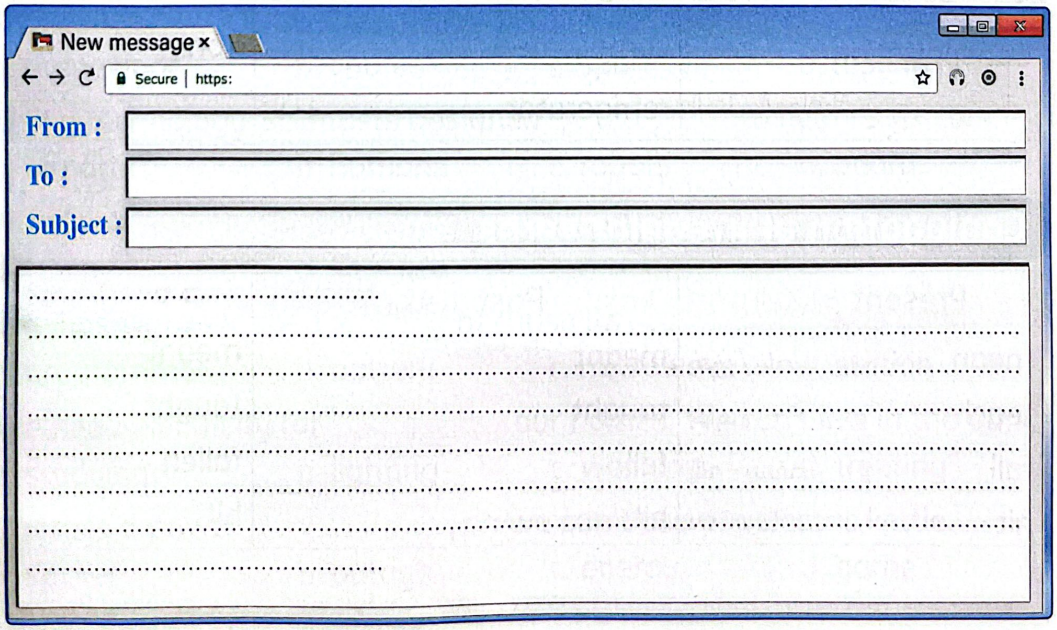
.....

6 Write an email of SEVENTY [70] words about your bedroom to your friend Essam. Your friend's email address is essam@yahoo.com. Your name is Mahdy and your email address is mahdy22@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- comfortable
- desk
- share
- computer games



Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 3&4

- Explaining your opinion
- Story : The Day the Bills broke down



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

power socket	مقبس التيار الكهربى
extension cable	وصلة سلك (كابل)
interactive whiteboard	السبورة التفاعلية
electricity	الكهرباء
break down	يتعطل
shocked	مُروع / مصدوم
terrible	سئ
power outage = power cut	انقطاع التيار الكهربى
lighting	إضاءة
programme	يُبرمج / برنامج
battery	بطارية
robot	إنسان آلى
chores	الأعمال المنزلية

• Extra vocabulary

strange غريب	plan يخطط	bus stations محطات أتوبيس
suddenly فجأة	airport مطار	
useful مفيد	discussion مناقشة	traveling السفر
microwave فرن الميكروويف	electric كهربى	free time وقت الفراغ
normally بصورة طبيعية	pants بنطلون	busily بنشاط / بهمة
quietly بهدوء	daughter ابنة	fix يصلح
transportation النقل والمواصلات	complicated معقد	iron يكوى
	refrigerator ثلاجة	

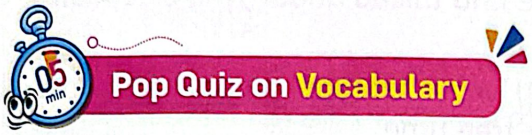
Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mean يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant
teach يُدرس	taught	taught
fall يقع - يسقط	fell	fallen
hit يصدم	hit	hit

Scanned with CamScanner

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

I know what you mean	أفهم ما تقصده	do the chores	يقوم بأداء الأعمال المنزلية
In my opinion	فى رأيى	sit in a circle	يجلس فى دائرة
learn how to	يتعلم كيف يقوم بـ	look for information	يبحث عن معلومات
I don't agree .	لا أتفق معك.	go on the internet	يتصل بـ الإنترنت
fill... with	يملأ .... بـ	at midnight	فى منتصف الليل





Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We need ..... to use electric appliances in our homes.

(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / القاهرة / مصر الجديدة)

a. electricity b. wood c. glass d. ice

2. ..... helps people move from one place to another.

(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / المنيا / مطاى)

a. Glass b. Chess c. Vaccine d. Transportation

3. My mom wakes up early to ..... our school uniforms.

a. cut b. chop c. iron d. heat

4. I went to school very late because the school bus ..... .

a. ran fast b. worked well c. broke down d. arrived early

5. My sister helps my mom do the ..... . She usually washes the dishes.

a. homework b. chores c. sport d. research

6. Using technology, scientists designed ..... to help us fix cars.

a. airports b. humans c. robots d. boards

7. After the accident, the boys were ..... and scared.

a. happy b. shocked c. funny d. excited

8. The flashlight stopped working because its ..... was dead.

a. programme b. battery c. microwave d. station

9. We need electricity for ..... our homes. We can't live in the dark.

a. studying b. lighting c. washing d. treating

10. There is a power ..... , so we can't use our electric kettle.

a. socket b. outage c. energy d. game

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Ruby's day at school	power outage	Ruby had a strange day at school because they had a power outage.
	interactive	They were looking at the interactive whiteboard and suddenly all the information disappeared.
	power socket	The teacher tried a different power socket.
	electricity	They sat in a circle and talked about why electricity is important.
Why electricity is important in our lives	free time	We need electricity to use laptops, play video games or watch TV in our free time.
	light	Electricity is most important for lighting as we need lights in the evening.
	blender - electricity	We can't use our electric kettle, blender and refrigerator without electricity.
	stations -electricity	Bus stations and airports all use electricity.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص
الاستماع

Ruby's day at school

Mom : Hi Ruby, how was your day ?

Ruby : Oh, hi Mom ! It was a strange day, actually. We had a **power outage**[1]! My class and I were looking at the **interactive whiteboard**[2], when suddenly all the information disappeared.

Mom : Really ? That is strange ! What did Miss Anderson do ?

Ruby : Well, first she got an **extension cable**[3] and tried a different **power socket**[4], but that wasn't working either.

Mom : Oh no ! So, there was no **electricity**[5]! What happened ?

Ruby : We couldn't do the lesson Miss Anderson planned. So she asked us all to sit in a circle and talk about why electricity is important in our lives.

Mom : Let me guess - everyone thought it was important for computer games !

Ruby : Ha ha! Actually, no. We all had lots of different ideas. It was a really interesting **discussion**[6].

[1] انقطاع التيار الكهربى
[2] السبورة التفاعلية
[3] وصلة سلك
[4] مقبس التيار
[5] الكهرباء
[6] مناقشة

Scanned with CamScanner

Whose opinion do you agree with most ?



Morgan

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop ! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too.



Tom

I know what you mean, but I think electricity is most important for lighting. I don't like the dark, and we need lights in the evening.



Sara

I don't agree. I think it's more important in the kitchen. We couldn't use our electric kettle without electricity, or our blender - or our refrigerator !

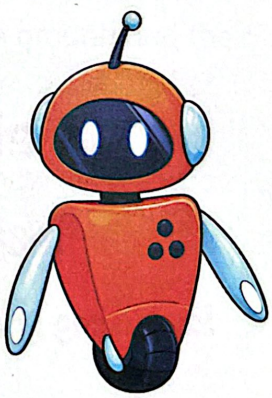


Lewis

What about transportation ?
Some people have electric cars. And bus stations and airports all need electricity, too.

The Day the Bills broke down !

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet ! Every family has a Bill robot. The Bill robots do all the **chores**[1]. However, a year ago, something terrible happened.



The day started normally. In Australia , some Bills were ironing clothes. In Italy, some Bills were quietly making milkshakes, others were fixing cars. In Canada, the Bills were making sandwiches. But then, all over the world, the robots suddenly **broke down**[2]. They fell to the ground, and their lights went out.

One shocked family in Toronto tried to wake up their robot. "Bill!" said Mom, "What happened? We need our sandwiches !" Bill said nothing. Cody, the young son, started crying", "Who is going to iron my school pants ?" "I programmed Bill to fix my car and change the **battery**[3]. What am I going to do ?" Dad said.

[1] الاعمال المنزلية
[2] يتعطل
[3] بطارية

Scanned with CamScanner

Everyone looked worried, but the daughter, Laura, said, "We'll go on the internet and learn how to do the chores ourselves, like Grandad used to do."

The family started watching videos. They learned how to use a blender and had milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the microwave to heat some food. Dad tried to learn how to fix his car, but it was too difficult. And he **certainly**[4] didn't understand how to change the car battery - that was very **complicated**[5]. Cody quickly learned how to iron his own clothes !

[4] بالتأكيد
[5] معقد
[6] ومع ذلك
[7] البشر

Luckily, a computer engineer quickly solved the problem, and all the Bills started working again. The Bills in Canada were busily cleaning cars. Life was normal again. **However**[6], the **humans**[7] know what to do if the Bills break down again.

Make logical inference from the text.
قم باستنتاج منطقى من النص

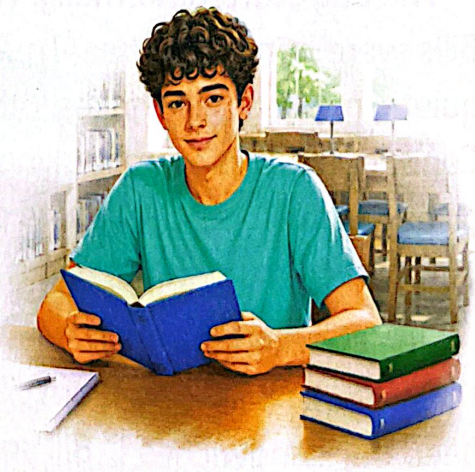
Learn 1. Why were people sad when their Bills broke down ?
- Because the Bills were doing all the chores.

Practice 2. How did the internet help Laura's family ?
.....

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط



Scanned with CamScanner

Test 8 On Lessons 3 & 4



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Mazen think is the most useful thing in our free time ?
.....
2. Which device does he use to do his homework ?
.....
3. Who does he play video games with ?
.....
4. When does he love to watch TV with his grandma ?
.....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

desk – electricity – whiteboard – outage – cable

My name is Mariam. I had a strange day at school yesterday. My class had a power [1] ..... ! Our teacher was looking at the interactive [2] ....., when suddenly all the information disappeared. Our teacher got an extension [3] ..... and tried a different power socket, but that wasn't working either. We knew that there was no [4] ..... . *(Menoufia - Menouf 2024)*

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In the year 2089, every family around the world has a Bill robot which does all the chores. However, one night at midnight, all the Bills broke down and they weren't able to do any chores ! The Bills fell on the ground and their lights went out. One shocked family in Toronto tried to wake up their robot. Everyone looked worried. The family started watching videos. They learned how to use the blender and had milkshakes, Mom learned how to heat food in the microwave. Dad tried to **fix** his car and change the car battery, but he couldn't. It was too difficult.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The best title for the text is " ..... ".
   a. Future jobs b. Heating food
   c. Life without robots d. A car accident

2. The underlined word "**fix**" means ..... .
   a. damage b. repair c. sell d. design

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the Bill robot do ?

.....

4. What did Mom learn to do ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mom may ..... jam if she buys fresh strawberries.
   a. make b. makes c. made d. making
2. If we have free time, we ..... join the sports club.
   a. were b. will c. are d. do
3. They can't answer the question ..... they don't do their homework.
   a. and b. but c. what d. if
4. We can ..... fishing if we learn how to catch fish.
   a. to go b. goes c. go d. going

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to fix – the robot – I – my – programmed – car. *(Sharkya - East Zagazig 2025)*

.....

2. airports - need - Bus - and - electricity - stations. *(Cairo - Ain Shams 2025)*

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Why is electricity important ?

Guiding elements:

• opinion • electricity • free time • laptop • kitchen • electric kettle

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Minya - Mallawi 2024)

Scanned with CamScanner



Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSONS 1&2

.....	يتبادل	invention	.....
.....	شقة سكنية	appliance	.....
.....	خلاط	sporty	.....
.....	شفرة	vaccine	.....
.....	كتب مصورة مضحكة	toaster	.....
.....	مجفف الشعر	chess	.....

LESSONS 3&4

.....	يتعطل	electricity	.....
.....	إضاءة	shocked	.....
.....	إنسان آلى	chores	.....
.....	انقطاع التيار الكهربى	battery	.....
.....	برنامج	power socket	.....
.....	السبورة التفاعلية	terrible	.....

▸ **Read and write.**

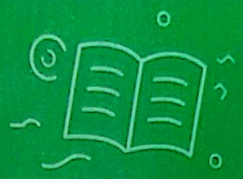
• **Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
.....	يفوز	won	won
hide	يختبئ	hid	.....
.....	يقود	drove	driven
mean	يعنى/يقصد	.....	meant
.....	يدرس	taught	taught
hit	يصدم	hit	.....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 5&6

- Language
- Literature Corner



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

strange	غريب	jewels	حُلى ثمينة / جواهر
wonders	عجائب	court	بلاط الملك
celebration	احتفال		

• Chores الاعمال المنزلية

mop up the water	يجفف المياه	hang up the clothes	يُعلق الملابس
pick up the books	يجمع الكتب	clean up the kitchen	ينظف المطبخ
tidy up my room	أرتب غرفتي	put out the garbage	يُخرج القمامة
put away the dishes	يضع الأطباق في مكانها	wash the dishes	يغسل الأطباق

• Extra vocabulary

journey	رحلة طويلة	precious	ثمين	ruler	حاكم
sights	مناظر	event	حدث	hunger	جوع
illness	مرض	unfamiliar	غير مألوف	continent	قارة
return	يعود / عودة	gathering	تجمع	reach	يصل إلى
promise	يعد	hall cupboard	خزانة الصالة	wild	بري
chance	فرصة	talks	محادثات	travels	رحلات

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
give	يعطى	gave	given
become	يصبح	became	become
strike	يصيب	struck	struck
hang up	يعلق	hung up	hung up

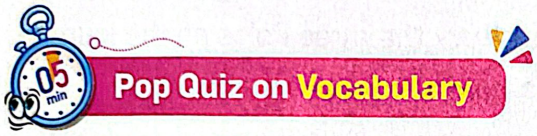
Scanned with CamScanner

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
court	the place where a king or queen lives
jewels	precious things that people wear, for example necklaces and rings
wonders	things which are beautiful or amazing to see
celebration	a special event, for example a party or gathering
different	unusual or unfamiliar

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

far from	بعيدًا عن	at last	أخيرًا
bring back	يجلب معه	keep notes	يدوّن ملاحظات
go back	يعود	pass through	يمر عبر
run out of	ينفد من		





Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The queen wore beautiful ..... at the party.
   a. deserts b. jewels c. notes d. crafts
2. Omar is ..... up the kitchen.
   a. picking b. keeping c. cleaning d. promising
3. The children enjoyed the amazing ..... in the city.
   a. hunger b. rulers c. sights d. notes
4. Fares needs to ..... up his toys from the floor.
   a. put b. hang c. walk d. pick
5. The king invited his guests to his ..... .
   a. continent b. court c. craft d. cart
6. We organized a big ..... after winning the competition.
   a. ruler b. illness c. celebration d. desert
7. The king was a wise ..... who cared about his people.
   a. ruler b. craft c. sight d. note
8. My grandfather makes beautiful handmade ..... .
   a. courts b. crafts c. journeys d. continents

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Doing some chores	put away	Rasha will put away the dishes.
	clean up	Rasha will clean up the kitchen.
	put out	Granddad will put out the garbage.
	hang up	Rasha will hang up dad's jacket in the hall cupboard.
	mop up	Rasha will mop up the orange juice from the table.
A trip that took twenty years	chance	Marco Polo was about seventeen when he was given his great chance.
	return - journey	His father and uncle had returned to Venice after a long journey.
	want	The Polo brothers wanted young Marco to go with them.
	sights	Marco saw amazing sights during the journey to China.
	meet - ways	He met people who had different ways of living.
	illness - struck	Hunger and illness struck the three Polos on the journey.
	book - travels	Marco Polo wrote a book about his travels.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص
الاستماع

Granddad : Rasha, let's tidy up the house before your mom gets home. I've washed the dishes.

Rasha : OK, Granddad. I'll put away the dishes and then I'll clean up the kitchen.

Granddad : Good. I'll put out the garbage. It's too heavy for you to carry.

Rasha : Thanks, Granddad. Would you like me to pick up Cody's toys and put them in his room?

Granddad : Yes, please. Could you hang up your dad's jacket in the hall cupboard?

Rasha : OK. When we've finished this, I'll mop up the orange juice from the table.

Granddad : Thanks, Rasha.

Scanned with CamScanner

A Trip That Took Twenty Years



Marco Polo was a boy of about seventeen when he was given his great chance. His father and uncle had just returned to their family in Venice after a long journey. They had been far from home for many years, and they talked about the **strange** and beautiful places in the East where no other Europeans had ever been before. They brought back gold and **jewels**. They could even speak different languages! Then came great news: the Polo brothers were going back, and they wanted young Marco to go with them.

"The trip will be very long," said his father. "Our friend, the great Kublai Khan, asked us to go back and we promised that we would return. This time we want you to see the **wonders** of the East with us."

And so it was that Marco Polo's journey began. During three years of travelling to reach China, he saw amazing sights. He met people who had different ways of living. Some spoke languages that he did not understand. He ate new kinds of food and learnt to kill wild animals.

The three Polos passed through forests, mountains, and deserts. But soon their animals died. They began to run out of food. Hunger and illness struck them.

At last, they reached the **court** of the Great Khan, ruler of the land we now call the continent of Asia. This was in the year 1275.

Kublai Khan had prepared a **celebration** for the Polos' return. He gave them new clothes and many expensive presents. The Great Khan also asked Marco to live in his court.

In fact, Marco Polo became one of Kublai Khan's best friends. He wrote notes about everything he saw and did. He learned to read, write, and speak new languages.

He traveled to the western and southern parts of Khan's country. He kept daily notes of the wonderful things he saw, and of his talks with the people. Later, he was able to help the Khan with his people.

He saw amazing bridges, beautiful crafts, and even paper made by the Chinese.

Twenty years passed before Marco Polo returned home with his father and uncle. He wrote a book about his travels.

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية

A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition, such as up, over, in, on, away.

• الأفعال الاصطلاحية هى عبارة عن فعل متبوع بحرف جر مثل up (فوق)، over (على)، in (فى)، on (على)، away (بعيدًا).

• **لاحظ أن :** قد يتغير معنى الفعل إذا تم إضافة حرف جر له.

Look at ينظر إلى
verb preposition

→ • Look up يبحث عن كلمة فى قاموس
• Look after يعتني بـ

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية			
• mop up يجفف	• cut out يقطع	• pick up يلتقط
• hang up يعلق	• put out يطفئ/يخرج	• tidy up يرتب
• put away يضع الشيء فى مكانه	• clean up ينظف	

• إليك بعض الأمثلة على الأفعال الاصطلاحية لتوضيح ما سبق شرحه.

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
mop up	يجفف / يمسح	- She mopped up the juice on the floor.
hang up	يعلق	- I'll hang up my clothes before I go to bed.

Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I'll mop ..... the water on the floor. Don't worry.

(Kafr El-Sheikh - English Supervision 2025)

a. out b. up c. in d. away

2. We need to clean ..... the floor. *(Sharqia - East Zagzig 2025)*

a. away b. up c. on d. out

3. Hana ..... her dresses to keep them clean and tidy.

(Giza - English Inspection 2025)

a. hangs up b. picks up c. puts out d. mops up

4. Please, help me pick ..... the books.

a. up b. off c. down d. on

5. Can you put ..... the dishes after dinner ?

a. on b. in c. away d. of

Scanned with CamScanner

6. She always tidies ..... her room in the evening.
   a. away b. out c. off d. up
7. We will ..... our house after the party.
   a. put out b. hang up c. clean up d. pick up
8. Your clothes are everywhere, please hang them ..... .
   a. in b. out c. up d. down
9. You need to pick ..... your toys from the floor.
   a. under b. for c. up d. in
10. Can you put ..... the garbage ?
   a. down b. on c. up d. out

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. He has put ..... [over] his clothes and now the room is tidy.
   [التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / الجيزة / الشيخ زايد]
2. She is cleaning ..... [of] the kitchen.
   [التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / المنيا / مطاى]
3. They are tidying ..... [on] the living room together.
4. Can you help me hang ..... [off] my clothes in the cupboard, please ?
5. The floor is wet. Mop it ..... [in], please.
6. I will clean ..... [on] my room tomorrow.
7. Would you like me to mop ..... [down] the juice ?
8. We'll help you tidy ..... [of] your bedroom.
9. She will put ..... [out] her son's toys after he sleeps.


A week is enough
مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 9 On Lessons 5 & 6



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who did Marco Polo travel with to China ?
.....
2. What difficulties did Marco Polo face during his journey ?
.....
3. What did Marco Polo learn while traveling ?
.....
4. When did Marco Polo return home ?
.....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

kitchen - hang - put - mop - give

Grandma : Let's tidy up the house before your mom gets home.
Yassmine : OK. I'll [1] ..... away the dishes.
Grandma : And I'll help you clean up the [2] .....
Yassmine : Good. I'll [3] ..... up water from the floor.
Grandma : OK. Could you [4] ..... up your dad's jacket in the cupboard?
Yassmine : OK.
Grandma : Thanks, Yassmine.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Marco Polo was about seventeen when he traveled with his father and uncle from Venice to China. During three years of travelling, they passed through forests, mountains, and deserts. They began to run out of food, and hunger and illness struck them. At last, they reached the court of the Great Kublai Khan in 1275. The Great Khan welcomed the Polos, gave them new clothes and **expensive** presents, and asked Marco to live in his court. Marco learned to read, write, and speak new languages. After twenty years, he returned home and wrote a book about his travels.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about " ..... ".
   a. Doing chores b. Marco Polo c. Making food d. A concert
2. The underlined word "**expensive**" is the opposite of " ..... ".
   a. messy b. noisy c. amazing d. cheap

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Kublai Khan give the Polos ?

.....

4. What did Marco Polo do after he returned home ?

.....

(Suez - North Suez 2024)

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. If you hang ..... your clothes, your bedroom will look better.

(Minia - Maghagha 2025)

a. away b. in c. up d. out

2. I'll put ..... the dishes after I wash them.

a. away b. in c. up d. out

3. They are tidying ..... the living room for the party.

a. out b. up c. on d. away

4. My dad puts ..... the garbage every day.

a. up b. out c. on d. off

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. tidy – the house – Let's – up .

(Cairo - Helwan 2025)

.....

2. up – the – She – kitchen – cleaned – yesterday .

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Marco Polo

Guiding elements:

- strange
- jewels
- wonders
- court
- celebration

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

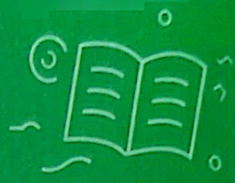
.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 7&8

- Writing
- Story



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

stroke	يلاطف / يداعب	collar	طوق (حول الرقبة)
sharpen	يحُد - يجعله حادًا	claws	مخالب
spare room	غرفة إضافية (للمخزن أو للضيوف)	florist	بائع الزهور
vaccination	تطعيم	fertilizer	سماد
scratch post	عمود خدش	attention	عناية - اهتمام
equipment	معدات	curious	فضولي - محب للاستطلاع
shocked	مصدوم	furry	مغطى بالفراء
brick	قالب من الطوب	great-grandmother	الجدة الكبرى

• Extra vocabulary

pet	حيوان أليف	message	رسالة	space	مساحة - مسافة
chin	ذقن	glad	مسرور - مبتهج	temperature	درجة الحرارة
wooden pole	عمود خشبي	leather	جلد	indoor	داخلي
treatment	علاج	downstairs	الطابق السفلي	dust	الغبار
spray	يرش	childhood	طفولة	vet	طبيب بيطري
kitten	قطة صغيرة	hole	فتحة/ثقب	dirt	تراب
assistant	مساعد	garden center	مركز الحدائق		

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
dig	يحفر	dug	dug
feed	يُطعم	fed	fed
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

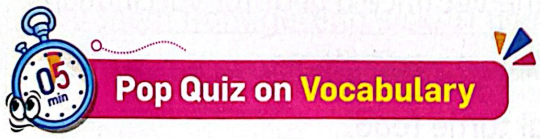
Scanned with CamScanner

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
scratch post	a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on
vaccination	a treatment from the vet to stop pets getting sick
furry	have a lot of soft hair
collar	a long thin piece of leather to wear around its neck
fertilizer	special food for plants
florist	a shop which sells cut flowers for the home
dust	dry dirt
curious	interested, feeling you want to know more
brick	a small block for building
stroke	you should move your hand over cat's back or under its chin
shocked	very surprised
great-grandmother	the mother of your grandparent
spare room	a room that is used for visitors or to put things in
kitten	a baby cat
remove	take off

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look after	يعتني بـ	go up	يصعد
feel at home	يشعر كأنه فى موطنه	remove bugs	يزيل حشرات
get lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	pull out	يسحب للخارج





Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The vet gives my cat a ..... to stop it from getting sick.

[التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / المنيا / مطاى]

a. collar b. pole c. vaccination d. toy

2. Cats are very ..... . This means that they have a lot of soft hair.

a. furry b. wild c. dangerous d. lazy

Scanned with CamScanner

3. We must give our children lots of ..... and look after them.

a. fertilizer b. temperature c. dust d. attention

4. The cat needs a scratch post to ..... its claws.

a. cut b. sharpen c. slice d. spray

5. We can buy beautiful plants from the ..... .

a. shoemaker b. florist c. vet d. bookseller

6. A ..... is a small block used for building houses.

a. post b. pole c. brick d. cube

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Caring for your cat	attention	Give your cat lots of attention.
	stroke	You should stroke your cat.
	sleep - warm	Cats like to sleep in a warm, comfortable bed.
	couch	Cats sometimes sleep on the couch.
	meals	Cats like small meals at different times in the day.
	scratch post	A cat needs a scratch post to sharpen its claws on.
	collar	A collar with the cat's name and address helps if it gets lost.
	vaccinations	Cats should go to the vet once a year for vaccinations.
Caring for your turtle	eat - flowers	Turtles like to eat flowers and plants.
	buy - food	You can buy special turtle food.
	turtles - space	Turtles need a very large space for their home.
	soil - dig	Turtles need clean soil to dig in.
	heat lamp	They sometimes need a heat lamp to keep them warm.
	sleep - temperature	Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص
الاستماع

Caring for your cat

How can I make my cat feel at home ?

Give your cat lots of **attention**[1] so it feels safe. You should **stroke**[2] it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin - cats love this !



Where do cats like sleeping ?

They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the **couch**[3]! Don't wake it up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day !



A cat sharpening its claws

What do cats eat ?

They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

What equipment[4] **does a cat need ?**

A cat needs a **scratch post**[5]. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can **sharpen**[6] its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A **collar**[7] with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.

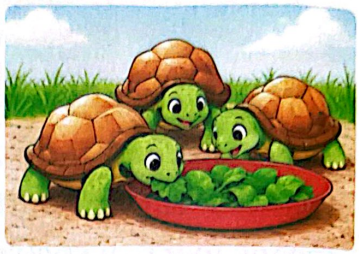
How often should cats go to the vet ?

Cats should go to the vet once a year for **vaccinations**[8]. These stop them from getting sick. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life !

[1] اهتمام
[2] يلاطف
[3] أريكة
[4] معدات
[5] عمود خدش
[6] يحد
[7] طوق
[8] تطعيمات

Scanned with CamScanner

Caring for your turtle



What do turtles eat ?

These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food.

How can I make my turtle feel at home ?

Turtles need a very **large** space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space ! They need clean soil to dig in, too.

What equipment do turtles need ?

They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

Where do turtles sleep ?

Turtles like sleeping in a safe, **dark** place where the temperature doesn't change.

Determine the meaning of words in a text.
تحديد معنى كلمات في النص.

Learn 1. The opposite of the underlined word "**dark**" is ".....".
a. clean b. bright c. special d. warm

Practice 2. The underlined word "**large**" means ".....".
a. safe b. cool c. big d. hard

Caring for your indoor plants



Where can I buy an indoor plant ?

You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, florists, and garden centers. These are stores that sell many different plants. It might be best to buy from a garden center as the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice. Make sure you know what your plant is called so you can find out more about it.

Where should I put my indoor plant ?

Some plants need to be in a warm, sunny place with a lot of light, while others prefer a cool place that isn't sunny. Look on the internet to find the best place for your plant. Most plants don't like you to move them. So, find the perfect place and leave it there.

Do plants need food ?

Yes ! The best time to feed your plant is spring and summer. Feed them with fertilizer. This is special plant food. Read the instructions carefully, because too much fertilizer can be bad for plants.

How often should I water the plant ?

Some plants don't need much water and others need more. You can check

Scanned with CamScanner

the internet for more information. If you don't know, it's better to give them too little water than too much.

How should I clean my indoor plant ?

Use a soft brush or cotton cloth to dust the leaves. This means that you clean dry dirt from the leaves. For plants with thicker leaves, spray them with water and this will keep them healthy.

Did you know ?

If you keep your plants happy and healthy, they will live for many years.

The special house



It was the summer vacation and Sameh was playing with his kitten in the living room. Suddenly, the kitten ran into a small hole in the wall! Sameh put his hand in the hole and tried to get it, but instead he pulled out some paper. It was very old. It was a message in a child's writing, Hello, I'm Monira ! I live here. Sameh felt very curious.

The next day, Sameh and his sister, Nadine, were feeling bored.

"Let's go up and look in the spare room," said Sameh.

There, they found some old boxes. Sameh looked in a box and found a little house, a doll and a birthday card : To Monira on your birthday, much love, Grandma. They ran downstairs. "Dad," said Sameh. "Who is Monira ?" Dad looked shocked. "Why did you ask that ?" he said.

"Look at this doll and this card!" replied Sameh.

"I don't believe it !" said Dad, "Let me tell you about the history of this house. It was built of bricks and stone in the 1950s.

My grandma – your great-grandmother – lived here with her mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters!"

"Do you think they were happy ?" asked Sameh.

"I think they were very happy, just like we are" said Dad.

"Is the house different now ?" asked Nadine.

"Not really," said Dad, "The walls are a different color, but that's all. I'm glad it hasn't changed much".

"But you still haven't told us who Monira is !" said Sameh.

"Monira was your great-grandmother - Grandad's mom ! " said Dad.

"The things that you found are from her childhood. I'm so happy we have them ! "

Scanned with CamScanner

III Writing skill

Definitions

▸ **Use definitions to explain what you mean .**

استخدم التعريفات لشرح ما تقصده .

- **When we are writing, we can use This is , or This means that to explain words to the reader.**
- عندما نقوم بالكتابة يمكننا استخدام "This is" بمعنى [هذا يكون] أو [This means that] بمعنى [هذا يعنى أنَّ] لشرح كلمات للقارئ.
- **Use This is before a noun phrase, for example :**
- استخدم "This is" قبل عبارة اسمية مثل.

ex. - A cat needs a scratch post. **This is** a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on.

- Use This means that before a full sentence with a subject and a verb :
- استخدم [This means that] قبل جملة كاملة تتكون من فاعل و فعل.

- Stroke it. **This means that** you should move your hand over its back or under its chin-cats love this!

Note لاحظ

▸ **When writing lists, remember to add commas.**

عندما تكتب قائمة، تذكر أن تضيف الفاصلة السفلية بين العناصر المختلفة.

ex. Plants need sunlight, space, fertilizers and water.

• Instructional guide : دليل إرشادى :

Tips to write an instructional guide : نصائح لكتابة دليل إرشادى :

1. Write a short question as a heading for each paragraph.

١. اكتب سؤال قصير كعنوان رئيسي لكل فقرة إنشائية.

2. Set your information in clear, short paragraphs.

٢. ضع معلوماتك فى فقرات قصيرة واضحة.

3. Write definitions for difficult words.

٣. اكتب تعريفات للكلمات الصعبة.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 10 On Lessons 7 & 8



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do turtles like to eat ?
.....
2. What do turtles need for their home ?
.....
3. Why do turtles need soil ?
.....
4. What do turtles need to keep them warm ?
.....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

meals – sharpen – attention – money – care

Fatma : Hello Noha, is this your cat ?

Noha : Yes, it is called Monda.

Fatma : I like cats, but I don't know how I [1] ..... for them.

Noha : Cats need a lot of [2] ..... to feel safe.

Fatma : When do they eat ?

Noha : They like small [3] ..... at different times in the day.

Fatma : What equipment does a cat need ?

Noha : A cat needs a scratch post to [4] ..... its claws.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It was the summer vacation when Sameh was playing with his kitten in the living room. Suddenly, the **kitten** ran into a small hole in the wall. Sameh tried to get it, but he pulled out some old paper. It was a message from a child called Monira, and Sameh felt very curious. The next day, Sameh and his sister Nadine went to the spare room and found some old boxes. Inside one box, they found a little house, a doll, and a birthday card for Monira. They asked Dad, "Who is Monira?" Dad told them about the history of the house. It was built in the 1950s, and Monira was their great-grandmother. The things they found were from her childhood, and Dad was happy they still had them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sameh and his sister Nadine went to the ..... and found some old boxes.

a. living room b. kitchen c. spare room d. bathroom

Scanned with CamScanner

2. The underlined word "**kitten**" means a baby ..... .

a. cat b. dog c. horse d. cow

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where was Sameh playing with his kitten ?

.....

4. What did they find in the old box ?

.....

(Suez - North Suez 2024)

---

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. If I have time this week, I will..... my friends.

a. met b. meet c. meeting d. meets

2. She can make a hot drink if she ..... water in this kettle.

a. boiling b. boil c. boils d. boiled

3. Can you mop..... the water on the kitchen floor ?

a. down b. over c. on d. up

4. My dad ..... up two posters on the wall.

a. hung b. cut c. look d. wake

---

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can – Where – buy – I – an indoor– plant ? *(Cairo - Helwan 2025)*

.....

2. should - the vet – Cats - go - to – a year - once.

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Caring for turtles

Guiding elements:

• space • safe • dig • flower

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية



LESSONS 5&6

.....	عجائب	strange	.....
.....	احتفال	jewels	.....
.....	مرض	court	.....
.....	حاكم	precious	.....
.....	قارة	sights	.....
.....	الجوع	chance	.....

LESSONS 7&8

.....	معدات	stroke	.....
.....	فضولى	collar	.....
.....	مخالب	sharpen	.....
.....	تطعيم	furry	.....
.....	سماد	spare room	.....
.....	اهتمام/عناية	florist	.....

Read and write.

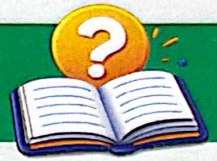
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P.
.....	يحضر	brought	.....
hang up	يعلق	.....	hung up
dig	يحفر	dug	.....
.....	يطعم	fed	.....
sell	يبيع	.....	sold

Scanned with CamScanner

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Make logical inferences from the text



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

1 Learn

تعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer.

Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922 ? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor.

The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.

Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

شرح الحل

تفهم المعلومات الواردة جيدًا من إستنتاج معلومات أخرى مثلًا :

- ستيفن استخدم إختراعه الجريد (الخلاط) فى صناعة الحليب المخفوق فنستنتج من ذلك انه يحب الحليب المخفوق من المشروبات.
- استخدم دكتور جوناس أجهزة الخلاط فى صناعة اللقاح فنستنتج من ذلك انه مفيد فى الطب.

1. Do you think Stephen liked milkshakes ? Why ?
   - Yes, because he used his new invention to make milkshakes.
2. Why do you think the blenders are useful in medicine ?
   - Because Dr Jonas used them to make a vaccine.

2 Master

اتقن طريقة حل السؤال [متبعًا الخطوة الأولى].

Read and answer the questions.

Cats like a warm, comfortable bed but sometimes they just sleep on the couch ! Cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day !

They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better. A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A collar with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.

1. Do you think cats like sleeping on a cold, hard floor ? Why ?

   .....

2. Why do you think it is a good idea to write the cat's name and address on a collar ?

   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Writing

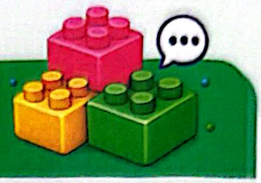


يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Your bedroom	**Write the meaning :** ..... يتشارك ..... شقة سكنية ..... مكتب ..... غرفة النوم ..... هوايات ..... مريح ..... العاب لوحية	**Complete the sentences :** 1. We moved to a new ..... last week. 2. I love my new ..... because it is a very comfortable room. 3. I ..... my room with my sister. 4. We have a long ..... for our PCs. 5. We play ..... in our bedroom. 6. We have space for our ..... like reading and video games.	**Write a paragraph using the sentences on :** "Your bedroom" ....
Caring for your cat	..... يداعب - يلاطف ..... اهتمام ..... وجبات ..... اللقاح - التطعيم ..... يحد - يجعله حاد ..... طوق [حول الرقبة]	1. Give your cat lots of ..... to feel safe. 2. You should ..... your cat. 3. Cats like to eat small ..... at different times. 4. A cat needs a scratch post to ..... its claws on. 5. Cats should go to the vet for ..... once a year.	**Write an instructional guide using the sentences on :** "Caring for your cat" ....

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1 Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Hany's room
   فاعل الجملة الأولى
2. Rasha
   فاعل الجملة الثالثة



الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. room – Hany's – light – comfortable – and – is.
2. are – medicine – Blenders – in – useful.
3. away – Rasha – put – will – dishes – the.
4. need – Turtles – soil – clean – dig – to – in.

	١ فاعل	٢ فعل	٣ باقي الجملة.
1.		is	
2.			
3.	Rasha		
4.		need	

2 Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. are
   فعل الجملة الثانية
2. need
   فعل الجملة الرابعة



الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

3 Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Should

تستخدم مع:

I / you / we / they / he / she / it

Do / Have

تستخدم مع:

I, you, we, they



الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. do - sleep – Where – turtles ?
2. often – go – How – cats – the vet – to – should ?
3. you – your – for – What – use – blender – do ?
4. do - bedroom - your – What – in – have - you ?

	١ كلمة استفهام	٢ فعل مساعد	٣ فاعل	٤ فعل	٥ باقي السؤال ؟
1.	Where				
2.					
3.		do			
4.				have	

4 The wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- Where [أين]: للسؤال عن المكان.
- How often: [كم عدد المرات] للسؤال عن عدد مرات الفعل.



أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Review, Practice & Master
for Correction Notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ.

Review راجع القاعدة وتأكد من فهمك

1 The first conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

If + present simple , ... will / can / may (not) + inf. مصدر

2 Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية

mop up	يجفف	cut out	يقطع	pick up	يلتقط	hang up	يعلق	put out	يطفئ
tidy up	يرتب	put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه			clean up	ينظف		

Practice تدرب على كيفية التعامل مع السؤال

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 I'll mop ..... [in] the water on the floor.	up	نستخدم [mop up] بمعنى يجفف.
2 If I have enough money, I ..... [would] buy a new bike.	will	جواب الشرط يكون [will] وبعده مصدر.
3 If he ..... [studied] hard, he will pass the exam.	studies	فعل الشرط يكون مضارع بسيط [studies] لوجود الفاعل [he].

Master أتقن طريقة حل السؤال

Write the reason. ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

1 If we ..... [going] out tonight, we may go to the cinema.	go	.....
2 If they don't ..... [wins] the match, they will be sad.	win	.....
3 If you help me, I ..... [would] finish early.	will	.....
4 Can you put ..... [on] the dishes after dinner ?	away	.....

Write the correction. ◄ اكتب التصحيح.

1 He will ..... [cancels] the party if he is sick.	.....	بعد [will] يأتي مصدر بدون إضافات.
2 If they ..... [be] late, their teacher will be angry.	.....	فعل الشرط مضارع بسيط مع الحالة الشرطية الأولى.
3 Hana hangs ..... [in] her dresses to keep them tidy.	.....	لوجود الفعل [hangs].
4 I will clean ..... [on] my room tomorrow.	.....	لوجود الفعل [clean].

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 A description of a room

We moved into a new apartment last month[1]. I'm happy because I have a new room[2]. My new room is very light and comfortable[3]. I share it with my brother[4]. We have a long desk for PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom[5]. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games in our room[6]. We watch cartoons with our friends, too[7] .My favorite thing about our room is that we have space for our hobbies[8].

2 Amazing appliances

I think the blender is one of the most important appliances[9]. It was invented by a Polish - American man[10]. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass[11]. When the blade turns, it chops the food[12]. He added a small motor which turned the blade to blend the food together[13]. He used his new invention to make milkshakes[14]. Blenders are also useful in medicine[15].

3 Caring for your turtle

From	tarek@gmail.com
To	taha@gmail.com
Subject	Caring for your turtle

Hi Taha,

I'm glad to send you this email[16]. How are you and your family[17]? I am sending you this email to tell you about how to care for your turtle[18]. These animals like to eat flowers and plants[19]. Turtles need a very large space for their home[20]. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space[21]| They need clean soil to dig in, too[22]. They also need a heat lamp to keep them nice and warm[23]. Hope these tips help you[24].

Yours,
Tarek

From Sentences to Topics

- Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.



Scanned with CamScanner



Review through the Exam on Unit 2

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات

25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات (التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان).

invention	اختراع	electricity	كهرباء	put away	يضع شىء فى مكانه
appliance	آلة / جهاز	shocked	مصدوم	jewels	مجوهرات
sporty	رياضى	chores	أعمال المنزل	court	قصر الملك وحاشيته
vaccine	لقاح	battery	بطارية	journey	رحلة طويلة
toaster	محمصة خبز	power socket	مقبس كهرباء	chance	فرصة
blade	شفرة	attention	اهتمام	power socket	مقبس [فيشة]
stroke	يلاطف/يداعب	furry	مغطى بالفراء	equipment	أدوات
collar	طوق	transportation	المواصلات		
sharpen	يجعله حادًا	florist	بائع الزهور		

10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Refrigerators, blenders and toasters are appliances[1] that we use in the kitchen.
2. The motor turns the blade[2].
3. We need electricity[3] to use electric appliances.
4. Transportation[4] helps people move from one place to another.
5. Rasha will put away[5] the dishes.
6. The vet gives my cat a vaccine[6] to stop it from getting sick.
7. Give your cat lots of attention[7].
8. You should stroke[8] your cat.
9. What equipment[9] do turtles need?
10. The teacher tried a different power socket[10].

[1] القاهرة - الساحل	[2] كتاب الطالب	[3] القاهرة - الساحل	[4] المنيا - مطاى	[5] كتاب الطالب
[6] الجيزة - العجوزة	[7] كتاب التدريبات	[8] كتاب الطالب	[9] كتاب التدريبات	[10] كتاب الطالب

Scanned with CamScanner

Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

1 The first conditional : ١. الحالة الشرطية الأولى :

▸ **Usage :** الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لنتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

▸ **Formation :** التكوين

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If (إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط), subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) /can / may / will not (won't)/can't + [inf.] (مصدر الفعل)

Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll)/can / may / will not (won't) /can't + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + if (إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex - I will arrive early if the bus comes in time.

2 Phrasal verbs : ٢. الأفعال الاصطلاحية :

A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition, such as up, over, in, on, away.

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	• mop up	• cut out	• pick up
	• hang up	• put out	• tidy up
	• put away	• clean up	

ex. - I will tidy up my room.

Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. I will buy a new apartment if I have a good job.
2. Mazen can't come to your party if you don't invite him.
3. If she wants to make juice, she will use the blender.
4. If I wake up late, I'll miss the bus.
5. If I am late for school, I will take a taxi.
6. I'll mop up the water on the floor.
7. We need to tidy up the room.
8. Hana hangs up her dresses to keep them clean and tidy.
9. He has put away his clothes and the room is tidy.
10. She is cleaning up the kitchen.

[1] كفر الشيخ - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية	[2] كتاب الطالب	[3] الشرقية - مشتول السوق	[4] المنيا - مطاى	[5] البحيرة - أبو المطامير
[6] كفر الشيخ - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية	[7] الشرقية - شرق الزقازيق	[8] الجيزة - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية	[9] الجيزة - الشيخ زايد	[10] كتاب التدريبات

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 11 On Unit 2



• نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

إختبار المعاصر

• 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What was Sameh doing in the living room ?
.....
2. Where did the kitten run ?
.....
3. Why did Sameh put his hand in the hole ?
.....
4. What did Sameh find in the hole ?
.....

• 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

tidy - clothes - put - chores - different

Yesterday it was raining, so we all stayed at home and cleaned the house. Mom and Dad gave us some [1] ..... as a challenge. We all had one hour to do our chores. My brother and I had to [2] ..... up our bedrooms. I had to hang up my [3] ..... because I sometimes leave them on the chair. My brother had to pick up his books and put them back on the shelf. Dad [4] ..... out the trash. Mom cleaned up the kitchen and put away the dishes.

• 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It is important to care for your indoor plants. You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, florists, and garden centers. A garden center is a good place to buy plants because the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you useful advice. You should know what your plant is called so you can find out more about it. Some plants need a **warm**, sunny place with a lot of light, while others prefer a cool place that isn't sunny. Plants need fertilizer in spring and summer. Too much fertilizer can be bad for plants. Some plants need more water than others, and cleaning the leaves keeps them healthy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about " Indoor ..... ".
   a. furniture b. activities c. games d. plants
2. The underlined word "**warm**" is the opposite of " ..... ".
   a. hot b. quick c. sunny d. cold

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is a garden center a good place to buy plants ?
.....
4. Where can we buy indoor plants ?
.....

Scanned with CamScanner

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. When Asser opened the car trunk, he saw clean boots. [.....]
2. Mom and Mayar chose an audiobook to listen to. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who did Asser want to come to the concert with ?

.....

2. What was Asser worried about ?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You will ..... sick if you eat a lot of chocolate. *(Sohag - El-Maragha 2024)*
   a. be b. was c. being d. are
2. If Nadia ..... practice well, she won't win the match.
   a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. wasn't
3. You have one hour to tidy ..... your bedroom.
   a. in b. out c. up d. away
4. If you touch that wire, you will ..... an electric shock.
   a. getting b. get c. gets d. to get

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. friends – watching – I – with my – like – cartoons.

.....

2. favorite – appliance – your – What – kitchen – is ?

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Caring for your cat

Guiding elements:

- attention
- comfortable
- meals
- furry

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 12 On Unit 2



• نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب

إختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والإختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When did they move into a new apartment ?
.....
2. How is Ali's new room ?
.....
3. Who does Ali share his room with ?
.....
4. What can they do when they finish their homework ?
.....

(Cairo - Ain Shams 2025)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

attention – appliance – stroke – furry – comfortable

Do you love your cat ? If you say, "Yes", you need to give it lots of [1] ..... to help it feel safe. You should [2] ..... it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin. Cats like sleeping in warm, [3] ..... beds. They need to sleep for fifteen hours every day. Don't forget to give them small meals during the day. Milk is bad for them, so don't give them much milk. If you look after your pet, you will have a new [4] ..... friend.

(Alexandria - English Supervision 2025)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance! I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make **delicious** soups, too. Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade. He used his new invention to make milkshakes. Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about " ..... ".
   a. Kitchens b. Smoothie c. Blenders d. Milkshake
2. The underlined word "**delicious**" means tastes ..... .
   a. good b. cold c. soft d. hot

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What happens if people have a vaccine ?

.....

4. Who was Jonas Salk ? *(Sharkia - East of Zagazig 2025)*

.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert. *(Cairo - Al Zaitoun 2025)* [.....]

2. Asser found muddy boots in the car. *(Sohag - El-Maraghah 2024)* [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser go to the garage ? *(Beheira - Abou Hommos 2025)*

.....

2. Who picked up Asser and Mayar from school ? *(Al-Beheira - Bandar Kafr Al-Dawwar 2026)*

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Please, help me pick ..... the books. *(Aswan - Kom Ombo 2025)*
   a. on b. off c. out d. up
2. If I ..... milk and strawberries, I'll make a smoothie. *(Beheira - Abo El Matameer 2025)*
   a. have b. having c. had d. has
3. I think we have to clean ..... the kitchen. It's really messy.
   a. out b. down c. off d. up
4. If I see Ahmed, I can ..... him to call you. *(Qena - Deshna 2024)*
   a. asked b. asks c. ask d. asking

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. at – Do – a blender – home – you – have ? *(Alexandria 2025 - West Alexandria 2025)*

.....

2. you - What – your - like - do - bedroom - about ? *(Cairo - Sahel 2026)*

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The chores you and your family do every weekend

Guiding elements: *(Cairo - Downtown 2025 / Menoufia - Tala 2024)*

- tidy up
- mop up
- hang up
- pick up

.....

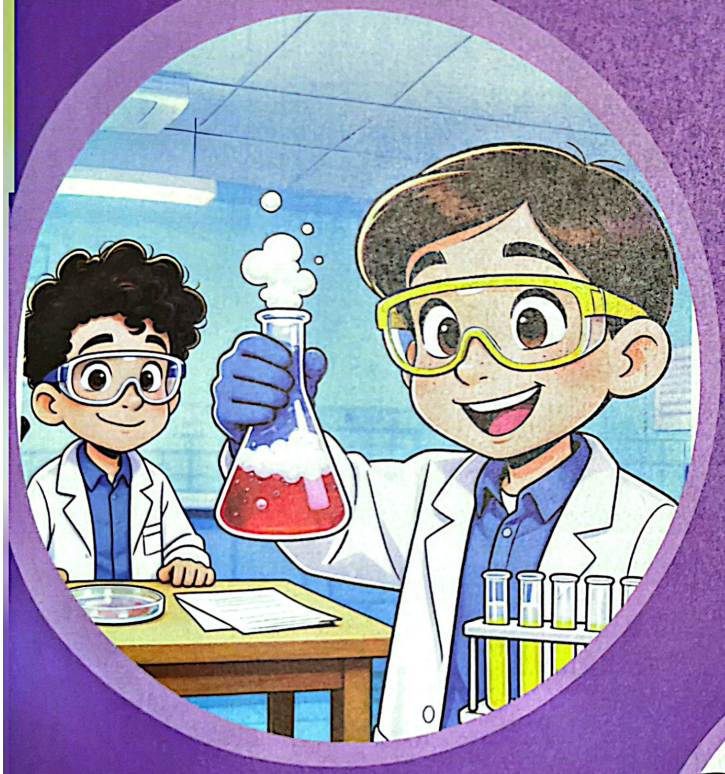
.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

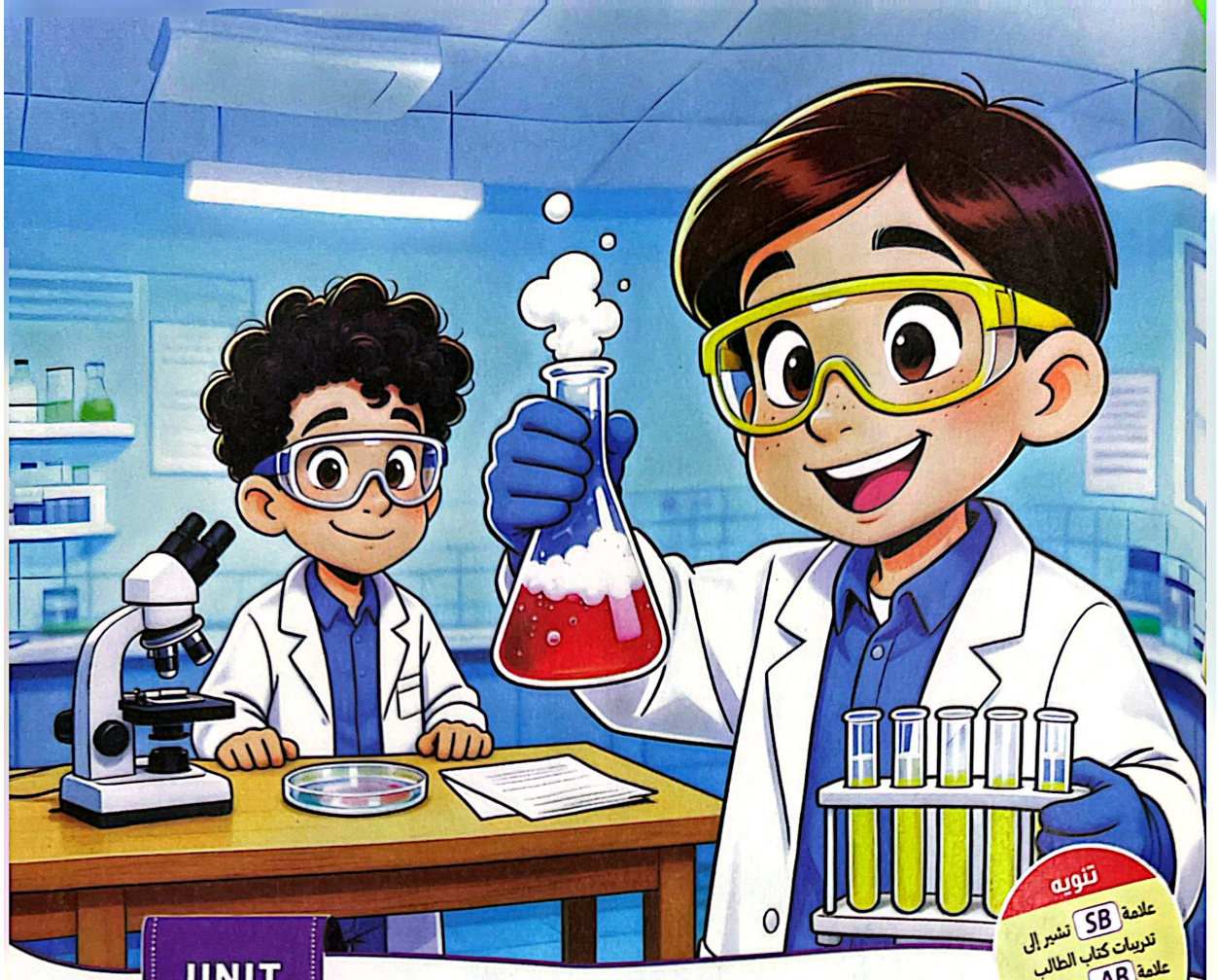
THEME 2

Myself and others





Scanned with CamScanner



تنويه
علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

UNIT 3

School time!

وقت الدراسة !

Aims of Unit Three : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة :

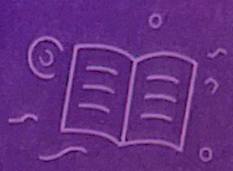
In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- read and understand an article about different kinds of classrooms. - أقرأ وأفهم مقال عن أنواع مختلفة من الفصول الدراسية.
- understand and use words for schools and education. - أفهم وأستخدم كلمات عن المدارس والتعليم.
- understand and use adverbs of frequency. - أفهم وأستخدم ظروف التكرار.
- listen to and understand descriptions of school clubs. - أستمع وأفهم وصف عن النوادى المدرسية.
- use make me + adjective to describe my feelings. - أستخدم صيغة "make me" يليها الصفة لوصف مشاعرى.
- understand and use reported speech. - أفهم وأستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر.
- read and understand a brochure. - أقرأ وأفهم كتيب.
- give reasons for my opinion in writing. - أقدم أسباب لرأيى كتابيًا.
- read and understand stories. - أقرأ وأفهم قصص.

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 1&2

- Different classrooms
- Language



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

green roofs	أسقف خضراء	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
nomadic	بدوى	neat	أنيق - مرتب
sleds	زلاجات	school subjects	مواد دراسية
mobile	مُتَنَقِّل	timetable	جدول مواعيد
cycle	يركب دراجة	flexible	مرن
school uniform	زى مدرسى موحد	nature	الطبيعة
reindeer	الرنّة (نوع من فصيلة الغزلان)	cafeteria	كافتيريا

• Extra vocabulary

tent	خيمة	boat	قارب	schedule	جدول زمنى
grade	صف / مرحلة	education	تعليم	topic	موضوع
Siberia	سيبيريا (منطقة فى روسيا)	traditional	تقليدى	skills	مهارات
chores	الأعمال المنزلية	computing	مادة الحاسب الالى	roof	سقف/سطح
middle school	المدرسة الإعدادية	Bangladesh	بنجلاديش (دولة فى جنوب آسيا)	ICT	تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات
kindergarten	روضة أطفال	floods	فيضانات	solar panels	ألواح شمسية

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
bring	يحضر / يجلب	brought	brought

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
mobile	can move
flexible	can change easily
timetable	a schedule with the times of all your school classes on it
boarding school	a school where children live and only go home at vacation times
subject	a topic that you study at school, for example, math, English, history, (or) science

• **Did you know ?**

• There are 787 million children in the world who are old enough to go to elementary school. These are a lot of classes!

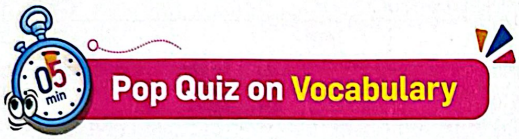
• هناك ٧٨٧ مليون طفل فى العالم قد وصلوا لسن دخول المدرسة الابتدائية. هذا يعنى الكثير من الفصول الدراسية!

Scanned with CamScanner

ICT	– a subject where you study and use computers – a subject to teach you computer skills
neat	clean and tidy, not messy or dirty
school uniform	– clothes that are the same for every student – special clothes which students wear to school
cafeteria	a place where students eat lunch

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the roof of	على سطح	on a boat	على متن قارب
get an education	يتلقى تعليم	make electricity	يولد كهرباء
on the move	متنقل	take the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس
go on school trips	يذهب فى رحلات مدرسية	have to + inf.	يجب أن + [مصدر الفعل]





▸ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. They like going to parks and enjoy the beautiful ..... there.
   a. nature b. technology c. video games d. floods
2. I'm sure he'll change his opinion after we talk. He is ..... .
   a. nomadic b. flexible c. calm d. neat
3. A ..... is a topic that you study at school.

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - الجيزة - الشيخ زايد]

   a. desk b. board c. subject d. classroom
5. A schedule with the times of all your school classes on it is called a ..... .
   a. mobile b. timetable c. vacation d. lesson

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - البحيرة - دمنهور]

6. We can sit and sleep in a ..... when we're in the desert.
   a. tent b. boat c. ship d. field
7. A ..... is a place at school where students eat lunch.
   a. playground b. cafeteria c. library d. theater
8. When something is clean and tidy, it's ..... .
   a. messy b. dirty c. neat d. ugly
9. A school ..... is the special clothes which students wear to school.
   a. subject b. room c. uniform d. playground
10. They travel on ..... when there is a lot of snow and ice.
    a. tents b. sleds c. boats d. plants

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Classrooms on the roof	bring nature	Green roofs bring nature into a city.
	clean - air	Green roofs help clean and cool the air.
	grow plants	They help students learn how to grow plants and look after a garden.
	students - fields	Students grow plants that you usually see in fields.
	green outdoors	Green outdoor places help students learn about nature.
Nomadic school	nomadic	Many people in Northern Siberia are nomadic.
	live - one place	Nomadic people don't live in one place.
	sleds - snow	They travel in sleds across the snow and sleep in tents.
	timetable - flexible	The timetable is flexible at the nomadic school.
How does Lilly go to school ?	middle	Lilly goes to middle school in San Francisco.
	kindergarten	She started school in Kindergarten when she was six.
	uniform	She doesn't have to wear a school uniform.
	walk - dry	She often walks to school when it's dry and sunny.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة



Classrooms of the world

Classrooms are not the same in every school. Here are two places where classrooms are a little different.

Classrooms on the roof!

In some countries, students have lessons in a garden on the roof of a building!

Green roofs bring **nature**[1] into a city, and help clean and cool the air. They help students learn how to grow plants and look after a garden. Students learn about plants and how they control pollution.



A roof garden in a city

(1) طبيعة

Scanned with CamScanner

On some green roofs, students grow plants that you usually see in fields. Sometimes, this can include a dead tree! This is because dead wood is great for insects and birds. Green outdoor places help students learn about nature.

Classrooms on the move!

In Northern Siberia, in Russia some students have their lessons in **tents**[2] in the snow! Many people in Northern Siberia are **nomadic**[3]. This means they don't live in one place. They take their **reindeer**[4] to find food, so they travel in sleds across the snow and sleep in tents.

So how do the children get an **education**[5] ?

Some children go to **boarding school**[6], and they are away from their families for many months. They can't learn **traditional skills**[7], and they often forget their own language.

Other children go to nomadic school. This school travels with the families. The classrooms are tents, or **mobile**[8] rooms on wheels.

The children study school subjects like math, science, and computing. However, they also study their own language and traditional skills. The timetable is **flexible**[9], so they can help with the chores.

At nomadic school, the children can stay with their families and still get a good education.



Nomadic children help to look after reindeer

[2] خيمة | [3] بدو | [4] حيوان الرنة | [5] تعليم | [6] مدرسة داخلية | [7] مهارات تقليدية | [8] متنقل | [9] مرن

How does Lilly go to school ?

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers!



Lilly, USA

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 a.m and finishes at 3 p.m. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

always	usually	often	sometimes	never
●●●●	●●●○	●●○○	●○○○	○○○○

Usage : الاستخدام

- We can use **adverbs of frequency** with the present simple to say **how often** something happens.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لتحديد عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شئ ما.

- They can help to describe habits or routines.

يمكن أن تساعد ظروف التكرار فى وصف العادات أو الأعمال الروتينية.

- Adverbs of frequency come before most verbs, but they come after verb to be.

تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل معظم الأفعال ولكن تأتى بعد "verb to be" فى الجملة.

ex. I **am never** late for school. - She **often walks** to school.

Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. It ..... rains in August. It's always sunny. *(Gharbia - West Tanta 2025)*
   a. usually b. never c. sometimes d. often
2. He ..... walks to school. He takes the bus.
   a. never b. always c. sometimes d. usually
3. He ..... late for school.
   a. were always b. is always c. always are d. always is
4. It's ..... sunny and hot in July. We go swimming every day.
   a. sometimes b. never c. always d. often
5. SB I ..... wear my school uniform. It's a school rule.
   a. always b. never c. sometimes d. often
6. We ..... to the club on Monday.
   a. go sometimes b. never goes c. sometimes go d. goes never
7. She studies very hard, so she ..... gets a good grade.
   a. always b. sometimes c. never d. doesn't
8. They do sport five times a week. They ..... do sport.
   a. never b. sometimes c. usually d. ever
9. He always arrives on time. He is ..... late.
   a. usually b. always c. never d. often

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 13 On Lessons 1 & 2



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where do students in Northern Siberia have their lessons ?
.....
2. Who don't live in one place ?
.....
3. How do nomadic people travel ?
.....
4. Where do they sleep ?
.....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

subjects – Grade – Kindergarten – toys – play

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in [1] ..... when I was six. Now I'm eleven and I'm in [2] ..... 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of [3] ..... in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we have many interesting [4] ..... , like ICT. I like using computers!

(Minia - Beni Mazar 2025)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Schools around the world all want to do the same thing - to give children a good education. In some countries, children **start** elementary school at seven years old. In other countries, the children are younger.

In other countries in Africa, for example, Kenya, some people have a nomadic culture, where they move from place to place. This means their teacher has to be flexible with the timetable. The teacher chooses subjects which are the most important at different times.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**start**" is ..... .
   a. move b. find c. begin d. finish
2. Kenya is a country in ..... .
   a. Africa b. Asia c. Australia d. America

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the importance of schools for children ?
.....
4. How is the school timetable in nomadic areas ? *(Kafr El-Sheikh - English supervision 2025)*
.....

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We ..... have lunch at home, but today we are at a restaurant.
   a. aren't b. usually c. never d. don't
2. They ..... the bus to school when it is cold outside.
   a. sometimes take b. never takes c. take never d. take always
3. He ..... watches action films. He doesn't like them.
   a. always b. usually c. never d. often
4. He ..... does exercises in the morning. It's his daily habit.
   a. never b. sometimes c. always d. ever

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. roofs – Green – nature – a city – into – bring.

.....

2. go – school – How – he – to – does ? *(Qalyoubia - English supervision 2025)*

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Your school"

Guiding elements:

- How do you go to school ?
- When does your school start ?
- What do you do at break ?
- What subjects do you like ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Menufia – Tala 2025)

المعاصر لغة إنجليزية / ٦ ب بلس / ترم ١ (٢٠٢٤ : ١٦)

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 3&4

- School clubs
- Green city school



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

encourage	يشجع	passionate	شغوف / متحمس
principal	مدير المدرسة	Eco-playground	ملعب صديق للبيئة
demonstration	إيضاح / عرض	open day	يوم مفتوح

• School clubs

cooking club	نادى الطهى	art club	نادى التربية الفنية
photography club	نادى التصوير الفوتوغرافى	drama club	نادى دراما / الأدب المسرحى
football club	نادى كرة القدم	swimming club	نادى السباحة
music club	نادى الموسيقى		

• Extra vocabulary

compare	يقارن	recipe book	كتاب وصفات الطهى	chance	فرصة
schedule	جدول/برنامج زمنى	race	سباق	persuade	يقنع
bike shed	مظلة للدراجات	climbing frame	هيكل تسلق	car park	ساحة وقوف السيارات
harm	يؤذى	nature trail	ممر طبيعى	tour	جولة
relaxed	مسترخى	presentation	عرض تقديمى	green	صديق للبيئة
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	terrific	رائع - ممتاز	act	يمثل

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
shoot يرمى - يُصوّب	shot	shot
meet يقابل	met	met
draw يرسم	drew	drawn

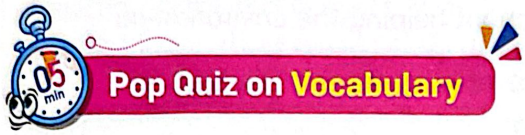
• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
passionate	having strong feelings
principal	the person in charge of a school
demonstration	when you show other people how to do or make something
encourage	persuade someone to do something by giving them advice or support
Eco-playground	a playground that does not harm the environment

Scanned with CamScanner

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

head to	يتجه إلى	in charge of	مسئول عن
shoot goals	يُصوِّب / يسدد أهداف	have a concert for	يقيم حفل موسيقى لـ
run up and down	يجرى ذهابًا وإيابًا	join in	يشارك فى
climb a rope	يتسلق الحبل	take place	يحدث





▸ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. A/An ..... is a playground that does not harm the environment.
   a. solar panels b. street c. stony playground d. Eco-playground
2. Listening to music makes me ..... . I feel calm.
   a. unhappy b. relaxed c. unhealthy d. hungry
3. I learn to draw and paint in ..... club.
   a. art b. science c. math d. Arabic
4. Nadia goes to ..... club where they sing songs.
   a. geography b. math c. music d. science
5. We make nice meals in the ..... club.
   a. music b. cooking c. drama d. art
6. We learn plays and ..... them in the drama club.
   a. act b. cut c. color d. draw
7. They use ..... panels to make electricity.
   a. petrol b. gas c. solar d. oil
8. A/An ..... is the person in charge of a school.
   (التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - البحيرة - التحرير)
   a. principal b. player c. actor d. painter
9. My teacher gave me a second ..... to do the project.
   a. roof b. chance c. frame d. park

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
School clubs	practice	At the sports club, we practiced inside for the first half hour.
	up and down	We had to run up and down the playground.
	climb – rope	We climbed a rope.
	race	We ran a 400-meter race outside.
	a walk	Our photography club went for a walk in the park.
	point to - photograph	When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it.

Scanned with CamScanner

	compare	We compared our photos.
	instruments	They sing songs and play many instruments in the music club.
	costumes	They make special costumes for actors to wear in the drama club.
Green City School Open Day	passionate	We are passionate about helping the environment.
	encourage	We encourage you to walk, cycle, or come by bus!
	recycle	We recycle paper, plastic, and other materials in the Recycling Room.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة



Art Club! SB

Everyone knows that art is good for your **mind**[1]. It makes you **relaxed**[2] and happy. Come to the art room at 1 pm on Tuesdays to learn to draw and paint.





Tennis is terrific [3]! SB

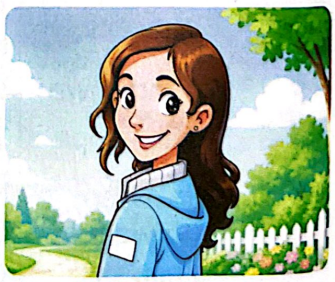
Tennis is a great sport. It makes you healthy and happy! We have classes every Wednesday at 4 pm. **Join**[4] our club to learn a new **skill**[5] and meet new people!

[1] عقل | [2] مسترخى | [3] رائع | [4] انضم | [5] مهارة

School clubs AB

Sports club

Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400-meter race outside. I love running but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won!



Scanned with CamScanner

Photography club



Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it but we could only take one photo! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!

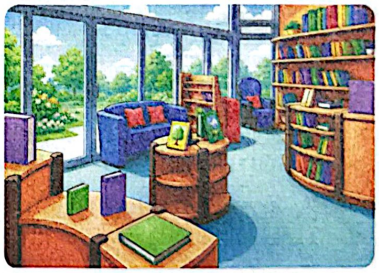
Nadia goes to music club where they sing songs and play instruments. They learn songs from all over the world. At the end of term, they have a concert for their parents.

Samer goes to cooking club. Every week, they make a meal from a different country. They take photos of their meals for a special recipe book. They can take the food home to eat with their families.

Malek goes to swimming club three times a week. It makes him healthy and strong. He sometimes does competitions, too.

Nader enjoys going to drama club. They learn plays and they act them for their parents. Sometimes they make special costumes for the actors to wear.

Green City School Open Day



Our Green Library

Welcome to our modern school, we are passionate about helping the environment.

We are the greenest school in the city!

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our Open Day on 25th May.

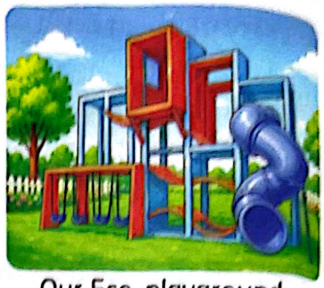
This is the schedule :

9 a.m Arrive at the school. There is a small car park, but we encourage you to walk, cycle, or come by bus! Show us you are passionate about helping the environment, too! Then the principal will give a presentation and tell you about the subjects, sports and environmentally friendly activities you can enjoy here. She will also explain how our school's green environment helps to develop happy and healthy children.

10 a.m Tour of the school buildings. We'll start in our new Green Library why is it green? Because all its electricity comes from solar panels! Then, we head to the Recycling Room, where we recycle paper, plastic, and other materials. Watch a demonstration about how we sort the waste from our classrooms so we can use the materials again.

Scanned with CamScanner

After that, come and see our Eco-playground. The climbing frame is made with strong recycled plastic and wood. There is also a nature trail through the woods that are next to the playground, where we can learn about the many plants, animals, and insects that live here.



Our Eco-playground

12 p.m Enjoy a healthy lunch in our School Garden, where we grow our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables. Some of these will be on your plate!

1 p.m This is your chance to ask the Green School students and teachers anything you want to know!

III Language

Using make me + adj. صفة

▸ **Formation :** التكوين

Subject + make(s) + object مفعول **+ adjective** صفة

ex. - I have some friends. ⟶ - I'm happy.
= My friends make me happy.

▸ **Usage :** الاستخدام

1. Use make(s) me to talk about how you feel because of something or someone.
١. استخدم [make me] للحديث عن شعورك بسبب شئ ما أو شخص ما.

2. You can also use make me with a verb to talk about how you feel because of an activity.
٢. يمكن أن تستخدم [make me] مع الفعل للحديث عن شعورك بسبب نشاط ما.

ex. - Watching cartoons makes me feel excited.

Note :

• Use the [verb + -ing] as the subject of the sentence.
• استخدم [verb + -ing] كفاعل للجملة.

ex. -I run. ⟹ I get healthy. = Running makes me feel healthy.
- I play tennis. ⟹ I get healthy.
= Playing tennis makes me feel healthy.

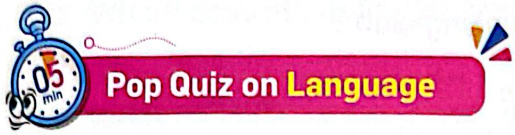
• The object can be a noun or a pronoun.
• لاحظ أن : يمكن أن يكون المفعول فى الجملة اسم [شخص، شئ، ...] أو ضمير «ضمير مفعول».

ex. -I help Hani at school. = I help him at school.
object (noun) object (pronoun)

Scanned with CamScanner

Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	I	he	she	it	you	we	they
object pronouns ضمائر المفعول	me	him	her	it	you	us	them



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Cooking club always makes ..... hungry. *(Beheira - Abo Hommos 2025)*
   a. I b. my c. me d. myself
2. Our friend, Hazem ..... us laugh.
   a. to make b. make c. making d. makes
3. Stories ..... children think and imagine.
   a. to make b. makes c. make d. making
4. The traffic always ..... us late.
   a. makes b. make c. making d. to make
5. Tennis is a great sport. It makes ..... healthy .
   a. I b. you c. he d. she
6. My brother ..... me angry when he makes noise.
   a. make b. making c. made d. makes
7. He tries to make the poor people ..... .
   a. happy b. happiness c. happily d. happiest
8. ..... much tea makes me sick.
   a. Drink b. Drinking c. Drinks d. Drink to
9. **A:** Your present makes me ..... happy. **B:** Thank you.
   a. felt b. feel c. feeling d. feels
10. Our teacher makes us ..... extra homework when we're late.
    a. do b. does c. did d. doing

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. ..... [Stay] in a boarding school makes her feel lonely.
2. Green areas ..... [makes] my children happy.
3. Traveling for a long time makes ..... [they] feel tired.
4. Studying math ..... [make] us feel excited.
5. Dad always makes ..... [I] proud.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 14 On Lessons 3 & 4



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة]

1 **Listen and answer the questions.**

1. What does Hana love ?
2. What club did Hana start ?
3. What does Hana think about the cooking club ?
4. What did they make for Eid Al-Fitr ?

(Kafr El-Sheikh – English Supervision 2025)

2 **Read and complete the text/dialogue with words from the box :**

A

concert - swimming - competitions - recipe - meal

Samer goes to a cooking club. Every week, they make a [1] ..... from a different country. They take photos of their meals for a special [2] ..... book. They can take the food home to eat with their families. Malek goes to a [3] ..... club three times a week. It makes him healthy and strong. He sometimes takes part in [4] ..... , too.

(Sharqia - Hihia 2024)

B

swimming – favorite – mind – relaxed – art

Mr Ali : Hello. I'm your new activity teacher.
Youssef : Welcome, Mr Ali.
Mr Ali : I need you to tell me about your [1] ..... club.
Youssef : I like [2] ..... club.
Mr Ali : Why do you like art club ?
Youssef : Because art is good for my [3] ..... .
Mr Ali : How does it make you feel ?
Youssef : Art makes me happy and [4] ..... .

3 **Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Mustafa likes sports. He goes to a sports club every weekend. He likes playing football there. Football is the most famous sport in the world. Mustafa always plays football with his friends. Playing football makes him healthy and **fit**. He also loves watching football games on TV. His favorite team is Liverpool. His favorite football player is Mohamed Salah. He is the best football player in the world. Mustafa wants to be like Mohamed Salah when he grows up. His friend Asser likes football, but he is good at tennis. He always plays tennis every weekend. In summer, Mustafa and Asser go to Alexandria to spend their summer holiday with their families.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "fit" is .....
   a. healthy b. strong c. weak d. bored
2. Mustafa likes .....
   a. music b. sports c. art d. history

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Mustafa play football ?
   .....
4. What do Mustafa and Asser do in summer ?
   .....

(Minya – Dermwas 2024)

---

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Helping mom in the kitchen ..... me proud. *(Luxor – English supervision 2025)*
   a. make b. makes c. making d. to make
2. ..... my friends at school makes me happy.
   a. Meeting b. Meet c. Meets d. To meet
3. Climbing high mountains makes ..... feel nervous.
   a. them b. they c. their d. theirs
4. How does learning a new skill make you ..... ?
   a. feeling b. feels c. feel d. to feel

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. tennis – happy – and – Playing – him – healthy – makes.
   .....
2. would – to – club – like to – Which – you – go ?
   .....

---

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Green City School"

Guiding elements :

- environment
- solar panels
- recycle
- sort

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner



Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSONS 1&2

nomadic	.....	أسقف خضراء	.....
computing	.....	الطبيعة	.....
flexible	.....	زلاجات	.....
timetable	.....	خيمة	.....
reindeer	.....	مرتب / أنيق	.....
mobile	.....	مدرسة داخلية	.....

LESSONS 3&4

encourage	.....	مدير المدرسة	.....
passionate	.....	عرض/إيضاح	.....
open day	.....	يقارن	.....
art club	.....	سباق	.....
schedule	.....	فرصة	.....
solar panels	.....	ملعب صديق للبيئة	.....

▶ **Read and write.**

• **Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P.
.....	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
bring	يحضر	brought	.....
.....	يصوب	shot	shot
meet	يقابل	.....	met
.....	يرسم	drew	drawn

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 5&6

- Language
- Literature Corner



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

bridge	جسر - كوبرى	nature	طبيعة	chalet	شاليه (بيت خشبى)
collapse	ينهار - يسقط	stream	نهر صغير	concert	حفل موسيقى
steep	شديد الانحدار	repair = fix	يصلح	hiking	المشى لمسافات طويلة
lake	بحيرة	journey	رحلة طويلة	crash	صوت انهيار

• Extra vocabulary

storm	عاصفة	knowledge	معرفة	confidence	ثقة بالنفس
broken	مكسور	mountains	جبال	acting	تمثيل
builders	بناؤون	path	ممر / طريق	adventures	مغامرات
discover	يكتشف	responsibility	مسؤولية	activities	أنشطة

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
begin يبدأ	began	begun
teach يعلم	taught	taught
know يعرف	knew	known

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
steep	- something which is difficult to climb - the opposite of flat
journey	the act of traveling from one place to another
repair	when you fix something
collapse	when something falls down suddenly
chalet	a large wooden house in the mountains
lake	a large area of water surrounded by land
hiking	walking for a long distance in the countryside
stream	a small river
nature	includes plants, animals, mountains, and rivers
concert	an event where people sing or play music

Scanned with CamScanner

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

lay awake	كان مستيقظاً	Well done!	أحسنت!
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	learn through	يتعلم من خلال
a long way	مسافة طويلة	respect for nature	احترام الطبيعة
hear about	يسمع عن	on the path	على الطريق



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



▸ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. When we travel to get to a place, we go on a ..... .
   a. river b. journey c. lake d. picnic
   (التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - الجيزة - ٦ أكتوبر)
2. If something ....., it falls down suddenly.
   a. crosses b. collapses c. moves d. builds
3. The engineers build a ..... to cross the river.
   a. tower b. beach c. bridge d. house
4. This mountain is difficult to climb. It's ..... .
   (التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - البحيرة - دمنهور)
   a. near b. steep c. small d. low
5. To fix a broken toy is to ..... it.
   a. repair b. cut c. damage d. destroy
6. We should protect ..... and keep our environment clean.
   a. nature b. music c. homework d. traffic
7. Many people attended the ..... to listen to music.
   a. lake b. hiking c. concert d. nature

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The bridge to school	storm - crash	Nancy lay awake listening to the storm, and then she heard a crash.
	collapsed	The bridge collapsed in the storm.
	bridge - way	The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to school in the village.
	journey	Nancy realized that the bus journey by road took two hours.

Scanned with CamScanner

	send - websites	Her teacher helped her send the letter and photos to different newspapers and websites.
	engineers – builders	Engineers and builders came to the river after they heard about the letter.
	metal – quickly	A week later, there was a new metal bridge so Nancy could get to school quickly.
The school at the Chalet	wooden chalet	Madge Bettany opened a small school in a wooden chalet in the Austrian mountains.
	sister - students	Her younger sister, Joey became one of the first students.
	enjoyed	Joey enjoyed life at the school.
	a walk – mountains	One morning, the students planned a walk in the mountains.
	realize	Joey walked ahead but she realized that she couldn't see the others.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة



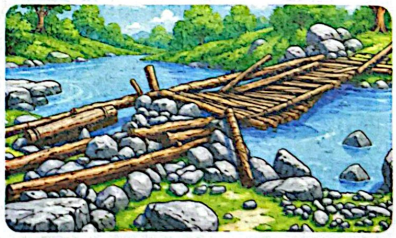
The bridge to school

Nancy lay awake, listening to the **storm**[1], and then she heard a **crash**[2].

"What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah.

"Oh, no! The bridge has **collapsed**[3]!" said Nancy.

The village where Nancy lived was small, and had **steep**[4] mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to school in town.



The bridge after the storm

"I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon".

Nancy's dad said that they couldn't go to school.

"What are we going to do ?" asked Nancy.

The next morning, a school bus drove into the **village**[5].

"Look, Nancy," said Sarah. "The bus is here!"

"The bus?" said Nancy. "But it's such a long way by road!"

"I know, but it's the only thing we can do," said Sarah.

[1] عاصفة
[2] صوت انهيار
[3] سقط / إنهار
[4] شديد الانحدار
[5] قرية

Scanned with CamScanner

Nancy realized that life would be different until someone repaired it. She was often the first to arrive at school but now she would be late!

The bus journey took two hours!

At school, Nancy wrote a letter about the storm and the broken bridge on the computer. Her teacher said that writing a letter was a great idea. She helped Nancy send the **letter**[6] and some photos to different **newspapers**[7] and websites.

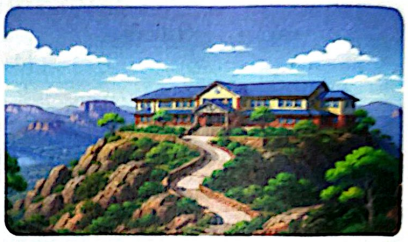
The next day, after school Nancy and her friends saw engineers and builders at the river.

"We heard about your letter!" said a man in a yellow coat. "We're building a new bridge, so you can get to school quickly."

A week later, there was a new **metal**[8] bridge. "Well done, Nancy," said Sarah.

[6] خطاب
[7] جريدة
[8] معدني

The School at the Chalet
by Elinor M. Brent-Dyer



Many years ago, Madge Bettany decided to open a small school in the Austrian mountains. She chose a large wooden chalet for her school, near a beautiful lake. Her younger sister, Joey, became one of the first students.

At first, there were only a few students. At Chalet School, their school day was different from the one Joey knew in England. Lessons began early, and the students studied English, French, German, history, and music. When the weather was fine, they sometimes had nature lessons outside.

Joey quickly enjoyed life at the school. She joined the music group and often practiced songs with her classmates. Other students preferred hiking, swimming, or acting in school plays. Every week, they spent time preparing activities together.

One morning, the students planned a walk in the mountains. Their teacher warned them to stay together on the path. Joey was excited and walked ahead, but she soon realized that she could not see the others. Dark clouds appeared, and rain began to fall.

Joey stayed calm and followed the sound of a stream back towards the lake. Soon, her teacher and classmates found her. Joey was wet and tired, but she was safe.

After that day, she listened more carefully to her teacher's instructions. She also helped organize a school concert for Madge's birthday. The students sang, played music, and performed a short play.

The Chalet School became a happy place where students learned through lessons, activities, and adventures.

Joey discovered that school could teach useful knowledge, responsibility, confidence, teamwork, and respect for nature.

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language

Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

الكلام المباشر "Direct speech" هو الكلام الذى يأتى على لسان شخص ما مباشرة أو نصًا ويكون الكلام موضوعًا بين علامتى تنصيص " ..... "
- "I am ill.", said Ali.

- We use reported speech to say what someone said.

يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر لأخبار بما قاله شخص ما.

- We change the tense from present, or future, to past.

نقوم بتغيير الأزمنة من المضارع أو المستقبل إلى الماضى.

Statement : الجملة الخبرية

Speaker	فعل القول	(that)	subject	Verb	باقي الجملة
المتحدث Ali	said قال / told أخبر + مفعول	that	الفاعل he	فعل الجملة was	ill.
الشخص الذى قال الكلام المباشر	told : لاحظ أن لابد أن يتبعها مفعول	[أداة ربط] يمكن حذفها	يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتناسب مع المتكلم والمخاطب	يتحول الزمن إلى الأبعد	

خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى غير المباشر :

١. تحويل فعل القول كالتالى :

said تبقى كما هى → said	said to تحول إلى → told
say / says تبقى كما هى → say / says	say to / says to تحول إلى → tell / tells

لاحظ الفرق بين told / said

said لا يأتى بعدها مفعول

ex. Omar said, "I like chicken." → Omar said (that) he liked chicken.

told لابد أن يأتى بعدها مفعول

ex. "I like chicken." Omar said to me. → Omar told me (that) he liked chicken.

٢. تحذف الأقواس ونربط بكلمة that ويمكن حذفها.

٣. يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتوافق مع المتكلم والمخاطب :

ضمائر الفاعل		ضمائر المفعول		صفات الملكية	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
I	he / she	me	him / her	my	his / her
you	I / we	you	me / us	your	my / our
we	they	us	them	our	their

"I am going to do my homework", said Lara.

Lara said (that) she was going to do her homework.

Scanned with CamScanner

٤. يتم تحويل زمن الفعل من المضارع إلى الماضي كالتالي عند التحويل إلى صيغة الكلام غير المباشر :

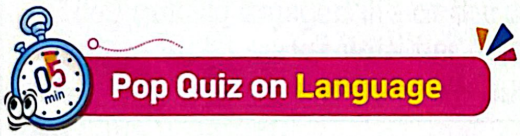
• Present tense :

Present ⟶ Past	
"I like reading", said Fares. "My dad works in Cairo," said Dalia. "I've found my keys. " Marwa said.	- Fares said he liked reading. - Dalia said her dad worked in Cairo. تحول الفعل [works] إلى [worked]. - Marwa said that she had found her keys.
Present [am - is - are]	Past [was - were]
"The train is fast", said Mona. "I'm doing my homework", said Ali.	- Mona said the train was fast. - Ali said that he was doing his homework.
can + inf.	could + inf.
"Salma can play the piano," said Amira.	- Amira said Salma could play the piano. تحول الفعل [can] إلى [could].

• Future tense :

- زمن المستقبل :

will + inf.	would + inf.
"I will travel to Alexandria," said Amany.	- Amany said she would travel to Alexandria. تحول الفعل [will] إلى [would].



1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. SB Mom said that she ..... just listened to the radio.
   a. has b. have
   c. is having d. had *(Alexandria - Gomrok 2025)*
2. Lina's mom said that it ..... a safe road. *(Minia - Bani Mazar 2025)*
   a. can't b. isn't c. won't d. wasn't
3. He ..... that he worked in Alexandria.
   a. says b. say c. said d. saying
4. He said that he ..... the full mark.
   a. get b. gets c. got d. getting
5. They said they ..... going to Alexandria. *(Giza - El Warraq 2024)*
   a. have b. were c. will d. are

Scanned with CamScanner

6. He told me that he ..... come.
a. is b. will c. can d. would

7. She said that the bus ..... there.
a. is b. was c. were d. has

8. Basel said that he ..... going to the museum.
a. was b. is c. will d. has

9. He said that he ..... never eaten sushi.
a. had b. having c. has d. have

10. AB A man said they ..... building a new bridge.
a. are b. have c. were d. was

11. Adam said ..... he liked swimming.
a. this b. that c. them d. then

12. She ..... me that she was in the kitchen.
a. tells b. says c. told d. said

13. They said that they ..... use the laptop.
a. may b. can c. could d. will

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. SB She said she ..... (walk) with her friends. (التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - الإسكندرية - المنتزه)
2. SB Sarah said that it was the only thing they ..... (can) do.
3. AB Lina said that the bridge ..... (has) collapsed !
4. Nada ..... (say) that she was reading comics.
5. Laila said her teacher ..... (need) a plan for the summer vacation.
6. He said they would ..... (spends) their weekend in Al Azhar Park.
7. She said she ..... (like) ice cream.
8. She said she ..... (be) living in Luxor then.
9. Hagar said she ..... (hasn't) seen Mera.
10. They said they ..... (will) come to the party.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 15 On Lessons 5 & 6



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في أختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Nancy hear during the storm ?

.....

2. What happened to the bridge ?

.....

3. What arrived the next morning ?

.....

4. Why was Nancy worried ?

.....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

bridge – storm – websites – letter – problem

Nancy lived in a village and crossed a bridge every day to reach school. After a [1] ....., the bridge collapsed, making travel difficult. She wrote a [2] ..... describing the problem and sent it to newspapers and [3] ..... . Engineers learned about her situation and built a new [4] ..... for the village. *(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2025)*

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Madge Bettany opened a small school in a wooden chalet in the Austrian mountains. The students studied different subjects and enjoyed activities like music, hiking, and swimming. One day, Joey got lost during a mountain walk. She stayed calm and followed a **stream** until her teacher and classmates found her. Through these experiences, the students learned responsibility, teamwork, confidence, and respect for nature.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The school was in a wooden ..... .

a. bridge b. chalet c. village d. lake

2. The underlined word "**stream**" can be replaced by a small ..... .

a. river b. cave c. mountain d. hill

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Joey do when she got lost ?

.....

4. What lessons did the students learn from their experiences at the school?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Alaa said that the party ..... started. *(Minia – Matai 2025)*

a. has b. is c. had d. will have

2. The coach said that they ..... well.

a. play b. playing c. plays d. were playing

3. Mona said that ..... would visit her grandma.

a. her b. him c. she d. us

4. Sara told Hana they ..... borrow their father's car.

a. could b. can to c. can d. to can

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. SB did – bridge – collapse – When – the ?

.....

2. Joey – the school – life – enjoyed – at.

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"The Chalet School"

Guiding elements :

- mountains
- study
- hiking

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 7&8

- Writing an opinion
- Story



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

scribe	كاتب	palace	قصر	herbs	أعشاب
papyrus	ورق البردى	court	بلاط / محكمة	school trip	رحلة مدرسية

• Extra vocabulary

education	تعليم	culture	ثقافة	experiences	تجارب
real life	الحياة الواقعية	mistakes	أخطاء	pharaoh	فرعون
confused	متحير/مرتبك	society	مجتمع	poisonous	سام
scream	صرخة/يصرخ	politician	رجل سياسي	cloth	قماش

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
shake يهز	shook	shaken
bite يعض	bit	bitten
hurt يؤذي/يؤلم	hurt	hurt

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
papyrus	a type of paper made from plants called reeds
scribe	a person who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court
court	a place where the pharaoh made important decisions
herbs	plants that people used in food or medicine

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	time for	حان وقت
pour ... onto	يصب ... على	put ... into	يضع فى
To sum up	وخلاصة القول	a roll of	لفافة من
for a while	لمدة قصيرة	pick up	يلتقط
first of all	أولًا		

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى
يهدف لإتقان
القواعد اللغوية

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. He got sick after the ..... snake bit him.
   a. cute b. safe c. poisonous d. small
2. The king and the queen live in a ..... .
   a. palace b. farm c. wall d. bridge
3. The doctor asked me to ..... the medicine bottle before drinking it.
   a. wash b. shake c. throw d. break
4. A ..... is a person who wrote about daily life in Ancient Egypt.
   a. doctor b. nurse c. pharaoh d. scribe

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Are school trips important ?	learn – places	We can learn a lot by visiting new places.
	project	We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.
	experience	School trips are exciting learning experiences.
	education	School trips are a very important part of our education.
Studying the past is important	create - present	Past events have created the present.
	learn – past	We can learn a lot by studying the past.
	society - cultures	History helps us understand our society and other cultures.
	life – change	We learn how and why life has changed.
	full of	History is full of great stories and interesting people.

Scanned with CamScanner

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة



Title

Are school trips important ? by Paige , aged 12

Introduction

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences.

Main Ideas

First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better.



Schoolchildren visiting a factory

In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.

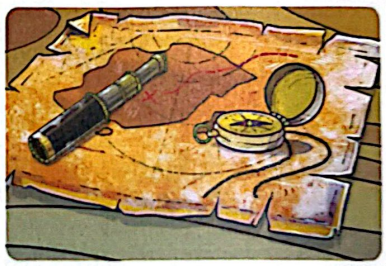
Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

Conclusion

To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education.

I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

Is studying the past important ? AB



I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present.

First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years.

Some people say that the present is more interesting than the past, but I don't agree. History is interesting and exciting because it is full of great stories and interesting people. Finally, history helps us learn from past mistakes so that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

In conclusion, I think that studying history is an important part of our education. History helps us learn from the past and it helps us understand why and how things change.

Scanned with CamScanner

The doctor comes to school

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



It was early and Nebsin didn't want to **get up**[1].

"Nebsin!" Dad called. "Time for school!"

Nebsin went into the kitchen.

"Why do I have to go to school when Babu plays all day!" he asked.

"Your brother will start school next year," said his mom smiling.

"I'm going to the **palace**[2], Nebsin," said Dad. "Let's walk together."

Nebsin's father was a **scribe**[3], who wrote about what happened at the **pharaoh's court**[4].

"Why did you want to be a scribe?" asked Nebsin.

"My father was a scribe, and his father was a scribe", said Dad.

Nebsin was **confused**[5]. He didn't know what job he wanted to do yet. Later that morning, Nebsin was listening to his teacher when suddenly, a boy started shouting.

"There's a **snake**[6]!" he shouted. A small, brown snake was moving across the floor. It **bit**[7] the boy's hand and he **screamed**[8].

"Quick, Nebsin!" the teacher said. "Get the doctor!"

Nebsin ran to the doctor's building. "Help, please! A snake bit our friend!" shouted Nebsin.

The doctor quickly picked up her bag and a roll of **papyrus**[9], and they ran to the school. "What kind of snake was it ?" she asked.

"It was small, and brown, with dark circles," said the boy.

"Good. That snake isn't **poisonous**[10]", she said.

She put some **herbs**[11] into a bottle of oil, and shook it. She poured this onto a cloth.

"Put this on your hand. It will hurt for a while but you won't get sick."

Nebsin was amazed. "I think I'd like to be a doctor one day," he thought.

[1] يستيقظ
[2] قصر
[3] كاتب
[4] بلاط الفرعون
[5] متحير
[6] ثعبان
[7] لدغ
[8] صرخ
[9] ورق بردى
[10] سام
[11] أعشاب

Scanned with CamScanner

III Writing skill

Writing an opinion

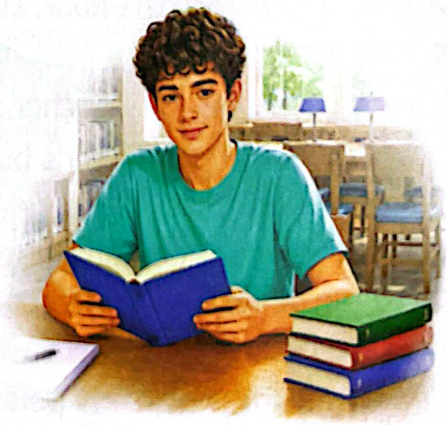
- **When you write about your opinion, you need to give reasons for it.**
- عندما تكتب عن رأيك فانك تحتاج إلى إعطاء مبررات لرأيك.
- **In the main ideas paragraphs, give different reasons for your opinion, and use phrases to introduce each new reason.**
- في الفقرات التي تناقش الأفكار الرئيسية يجب عليك إبداء أسباب مختلفة لرأيك، وكذلك استخدام عبارات لتعبر عن كل سبب جديد.
- **We use commas after these adverb phrases.**
- نستخدم فاصلة سفلية (,) بعد تلك العبارات الظرفية.

- **First of all,** we can learn a lot ...
- **In addition,** school trips are often more interesting than ...
- **Finally,** we can continue learning when ...

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط



Scanned with CamScanner

Test 16 On Lessons 7 & 8



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى أختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is Miss Basma ?

.....

2. When did Miss Basma tell them about the school trip ?

.....

3. What does Mona like ?

.....

4. Why are school trips exciting ?

.....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

poured – screamed – snake – brown – poisonous

Once in Ancient Egypt, there was a snake moving across the floor of one of the schools. It was a small, [1] ..... snake. The snake bit a boy's hand and the boy [2] ..... . The teacher called a doctor. The doctor said that the snake wasn't [3] ..... . She put some herbs into a bottle of oil, and shook it. She [4] ..... this onto a cloth. The boy put the liquid on his hand and got better. *(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2025)*

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In my opinion, school trips are **exciting** learning experiences. First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip. To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. We should go on one school trip every year.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about " ..... ".
   a. Ancient places b. school trips
   c. school subjects d. sports clubs
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**exciting**" is ..... .
   a. interesting b. important c. old d. boring

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do students understand things better on trips ?

   .....

4. How often should students go on a school trip ?

   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Honest people ..... tell lies.
   a. always b. never c. often d. usually
2. Hot weather makes ..... tired.
   a. my b. their c. he d. me
3. Mona said that ..... had finished her homework.
   a. I b. she c. her d. we
4. Youssef told me that he ..... busy.
   a. was b. is c. has d. had

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. does – look – like – the snake – What ?

   .....

2. trips – learning – are – School – for – important.

   .....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Your opinion about school trips"

Guiding elements :

- experiences
- interesting
- learn

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية



LESSONS 5&6

.....	كوبرى	steep	.....
.....	ينهار/يسقط	chalet	.....
.....	نهر صغير	hiking	.....
.....	حفل موسيقى	storm	.....
.....	يصلح	knowledge	.....
.....	بحيرة	confidence	.....

LESSONS 7&8

.....	كاتب	palace	.....
.....	ورق البردى	court	.....
.....	أعشاب	school trip	.....
.....	تعليم	scream	.....
.....	ثقافة	history	.....
.....	تجارب	poisonous	.....

▸ **Read and write.**

• **Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P.
.....	يبنى	built	built
know	يعرف	knew	.....
.....	يعلم	taught	taught
bite	يعض	.....	bitten
.....	يجرى	ran	run
shake	يهز	shook	.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

1 Learn

تعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer.

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences. First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip. To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education.

شرح الحل

تقرأ الفقرة جيداً لتحرير الفكرة العامة للنص وهي الرحلات المدرسية.

- The main/general idea of the text is about "……".
  Or : The text talks about "……".
  Or : What's the main idea of the text ? What's the text about ?
  Or : What's the best title for this text ?
  Give a suitable title for this text.

a. Watching videos
b. School trips
c. School subjects
d. New books

2 Master

اتقن طريقة حل السؤال [متبعًا الخطوة الأولى].

Read and answer the questions.

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present.

First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years.

- The text is about "……".
  Or : The main/general idea of the text is about "……".
  Or : The text talks about "……".
  Or : What's the main idea of the text ? /What's the text about ?
  Or : What's the best title for this text ?
  Give a suitable title for this text.

a. Studying history
b. The present
c. The society
d. Artists

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Writing



يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Classrooms on the roof	**Write the meaning :** ..... سقف المبنى ..... الطبيعة ..... ينظف ..... مرن ..... حقول ..... خارجية / مفتوحة	**Complete the sentences :** 1. Some students have their lessons in a garden on the ..... of a building. 2. Green roofs bring ..... into a city. 3. They help ..... and cool the air. 4. Students grow plants that you usually see in ..... . 5. Green ..... places help students learn about nature.	**Write a paragraph using the sentences :** "Classrooms on the roof" ....
School clubs	..... نادى الرياضة ..... التصوير ..... عقل ..... وجبات ..... آلات موسيقية ..... مسرحيات	1. We run and climb a rope in the ..... . 2. We learn to take beautiful photos in the ..... club. 3. Art is good for your ..... . 4. We sing songs and play ..... in the music club. 5. We learn about ..... and act them out in the drama club.	**Write an email using the sentences :** "School clubs" ....

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Sentence Building

الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1 Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. She
   فاعل الجملة الأولى
2. Art
   فاعل الجملة الثالثة

الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. cafeteria – eats – She – at – lunch – the.
2. nature – a city – Green – bring – into – roofs.
3. is – mind – Art – your – for – good.
4. wrote – about – storm – Nancy – the – a letter.

	١ فاعل	٢ فعل	٣ باقي الجملة.
1.	She		
2.		bring	
3.			
4.			

2 Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. bring
   فعل الجملة الثانية
2. wrote
   فعل الجملة الرابعة

الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

3 Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Can/Did

تستخدم مع:
I, we, you, they, he, she, it

Does

تستخدم مع:
he / she / it

الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. can – help – How – gardens – students – roof ?
2. does – school – to – go – How – Lilly ?
3. does – start – tour – Where – the school ?
4. did – When – the – bridge – collapse ?

	١ كلمة استفهام	٢ فعل مساعد	٣ فاعل	٤ فعل	٥ باقي السؤال؟
1.	How				
2.			Lilly		
3.					
4.		did			

4 The wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- Where [أين]: للسؤال عن المكان.
- When [متى]: للسؤال عن الوقت.

أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائما في بداية السؤال.

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Review, Practice & Master
for Correction Notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ.

Review راجع القاعدة وتأكد من فهمك

1 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار	
1. always دائمًا / usually عادة / often غالبًا / sometimes احيانًا / never أبدًا	ظروف التكرار تستخدم لتحديد عدد مرات تكرار الفعل
He always arrives late. He is always late.	تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى وبعد [verb to be].
2. make + مفعول + صفة / مصدر He makes me happy.	كلمة [make] بمعنى يجعل ويأتى بعدها مفعول + صفة / مصدر
2 Reported speech الكلام غير مباشر	
said	فعل القول بمعنى [قال] ولا يأتى بعدها مفعول.
told	فعل القول بمعنى [أخبر] ويأتى بعدها مفعول.
He told me that he would buy a car.	إذا جاء فعل القول ماضى يكون زمن الجملة ماضى

Practice تدرب على كيفية التعامل مع السؤال

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 He ..... [always is] late for school.	is always	تأتى ظروف التكرار بعد [verb to be]
2 They ..... [said] me that they would travel.	told	نستخدم [told] لوجود المفعول [me]
3 Our teacher made us ..... [doing] the homework again.	do	بعد [make] يأتى مفعول ثم [مصدر]

Master أتقن طريقة حل السؤال

Write the reason. معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

1 It ..... [always] rains in August. It's always sunny.	never	.....
2 Stories ..... [makes] children think.	make	.....
3 Lina said that it ..... [isn't] a safe road.	wasn't	.....
4 He ..... [told] that he worked in Alexandria.	said	.....

Write the correction. اكتب التصحيح.

1 Sara ..... [said] me that she was ill.	.....	زمن الجملة ماضى ويوجد مفعول
2 She ..... [walks often] to school.	.....	ظرف التكرار يأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى
3 Traveling for a long time makes ..... [they] tired.	.....	بعد [make] يأتى مفعول
4 She said that she ..... [like] ice cream.	.....	فعل القول [said] ماضى

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٨ جملة).

1 Classrooms on the roof!

In some countries, students have lessons in a garden on the roof of a building[1]! Green roofs bring nature into a city[2]. They help clean and cool the air[3]. Students learn about plants and how they control pollution[4]. They grow plants that you usually see in fields[5]. Green roofs help students learn how to look after the garden[6]. Green outdoor places help students learn about nature.[7]

2 Your school

We go to school from Sunday to Friday[8]. I have to wear a school uniform[9]. My school uniform and shoes have to be neat[10]. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny[11]. I sometimes get the bus with my friends[12]. We do interesting subjects, like ICT[13]. I like using computers! School starts at 8 a.m and finishes at 3 p.m[14]. We have an hour for lunch[15]. I usually bring lunch from home[16].

3 School trips

I think school trips are exciting learning experiences[17]. We can learn a lot by visiting new places[18]. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better[19].

In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos[20]. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip[21]. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip[22].

4 Green City School

At Green City School, students want to help the environment[23]. They use solar panels to make electricity[24]. They recycle a lot of paper[25]. They have a school garden to grow plants, vegetables, and fruit[26]. It is a great place to learn about nature[27]. The climbing frame in the Eco-playground is made of strong recycled plastic and wood[28].

From Sentences to Topics

- A Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.



Scanned with CamScanner



Review through the Exam on Unit 3

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات

25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات (التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان).

nomadic	بدوى	encourage	يشجع	steep	منحدر
green roofs	أسقف خضراء	passionate	عاطفى	journey	رحلة طويلة
flexible	مرن	open day	يوم مفتوح	hiking	التنزه سيرًا
timetable	جدول مواعيد	collapse	ينهار	experiences	تجارب
reindeer	الرنة (نوع غزلان)	schedule	جدول	builders	عمال بناء
mobile	متنقل	solar panels	ألواح شمسية	confidence	ثقة
palace	قصر	scream	يصرخ	concert	حفل موسيقى
principal	مدير مدرسة	chalet	شالية (بيت خشبى)		
subject	مادة دراسية	poisonous	سام		

10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. A subject[1] is a topic that you study at school.
2. A schedule[2] with the times of all your school classes on it is a timetable.
3. Green roofs[3] bring nature into a city.
4. A principal[4] is the person in charge of a school.
5. When we travel to get to a place, we go on a journey[5].
6. The bridge collapsed[6] in the storm.
7. This mountain is difficult to climb. It's steep[7].
8. School trips are exciting learning experiences[8].
9. A chalet[9] is a large wooden house in the mountains.
10. The concert[10] is an event where people sing or play music.

[1] الجيزة - الشيخ زايد	[2] البحيرة - دمنهور	[3] كتاب الطالب	[4] البحيرة - التحرير	[5] الجيزة - ٦ أكتوبر
[6] كتاب الطالب	[7] البحيرة - دمنهور	[8] كتاب التدريبات	[9] كتاب التدريبات	[10] كتاب الطالب

Scanned with CamScanner

Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

1 Adverbs of frequency : ظروف التكرار

always	usually	often	sometimes	never
●●●●	●●●○	●●○○	●○○○	○○○○

▸ **Usage :** الاستخدام

- We can use **adverbs of frequency** with the present simple to say **how often** something happens.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لتحديد عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شئ ما.

ex. - I am never late for school. - She often walks to school.

2 Using make me + adj. صفة

▸ **Formation :** التكوين

Subject + make(s) object + adjective صفة

ex. - I have some friends. ⟶ - I'm happy.
= My friends make me happy.

3 Reported Speech

يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر للأخبار بما قاله شخص ما.

- We usually change the tense from present or future, to past when the reporting verbs is in the past.

نقوم بتغيير الأزمنة من المضارع أو المستقبل إلى الماضى عندما يكون فعل القول ماضى.

▸ **Statement :** الجملة الخبرية

Speaker		فعل القول		[that]	subject	verb		باقي الجملة
المتحدث		said / told + مفعول			الفاعل	فعل الجملة		
Ali	+		+	that	+ he	+ was	+	ill.

Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. It never rains in August. It's always sunny.
2. Cooking club makes me hungry.
3. We never go to school on Fridays.
4. Mom said that she had just listened to the radio.
5. Lina's mom said that it wasn't a safe road.
6. They said they were going to Alexandria.
7. She said she walked with her friends.
8. Alaa said that the party had started.
9. Nancy said that the bridge had collapsed.
10. Brave people always help others.

[1] الغربية - طنطا	[2] كتاب التدريبات	[3] المنوفية - بركة السبع	[4] الإسكندرية - الجمرك	[5] المنيا - بنى مزار
[6] الجيزة - الوراق	[7] الإسكندرية - المنتزه	[8] المنيا - مطاى	[9] الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة	[10] كتاب الطالب

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 17 On Unit 3

اختبار المعاصر



• نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What school does Lilly go to ?

.....

2. When did she start school ?

.....

3. How old is Lilly now ?

.....

4. What interesting subject do Lilly do ?

.....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

part – learn - events – subjects – society

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. It is important to understand how past [1] ..... have created the present. History helps us understand our [2] ..... and other cultures. In addition, we [3] ..... about how life has changed over the years. I think that studying history is an important [4] ..... of our eduction.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nancy lived in a small village where a bridge was the fastest way to get to school. One night, the bridge had **collapsed** because of a strong storm. So the children had to take a long bus journey to school every day. Nancy wrote a letter about the broken bridge and the problems it caused. Her teacher helped her send the letter and some photos to newspapers and websites. After people read about the problem, engineers built a new metal bridge, making it easy for the children to travel to school again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. " ..... " is the best title for the text.
   a. The bridge to school b. A storm near the school
   c. The school bus d. Clever engineers

2. The underlined word "**collapsed**" means ..... .
   a. found out b. brought up c. fell down d. got up

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did the engineers do?

.....

4. Why was the bridge very important ?

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser was worried about the concert. [.....]
2. Asser wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who did Asser go to the park with ?

.....

2. What did Asser and Shady do when they got tired ?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Traveling on trains ..... her tired.
   a. making b. make c. makes d. to make
2. They said they ..... going to Alexandria.
   a. have b. were c. will d. are
3. He ..... his homework in the evening.
   a. does always b. always does c. often do d. usually doing
4. Reading makes children ..... excited.
   a. to feel b. feels c. feel d. feeling

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. feel - you – How – sport - does - make ?

.....

2. good - Playing – is – music – relax – to – a – way.

.....

7 Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about school clubs to your friend Saleem. Your friend's email address is saleem11@yahoo.com. Your name is Hatem and your email address is hatem90@yahoo.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- What clubs are in your school ?
- Which club would you like to go to ?
- Why do you like it ?
- How does it make you feel ?

From	
To	
Subject	

.....,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 18 On Unit 3



اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والإختبارات السابقة

• نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What was Nebsin's father's job ?

.....

2. What happened to the boy at school ?

.....

3. What did the doctor use to help the boy ?

.....

4. What did Nebsin want to become ?

.....

(Gharbia - Tanta 2025)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

trips – child – visiting – videos – better

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences. First of all, we can learn a lot by [1] ..... new places. When we learn something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it [2] ..... . In addition, school [3] ..... are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching [4] ..... .

(Beni Suef - Nasser 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

(Menofia – Tala 2025)

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers! We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be **neat**. School starts at 8 a.m and finishes at 3 p.m. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ..... .

a. Lilly's family b. Lilly's school c. Lilly's job d. Lilly's home

2. The underlined word "**neat**" means ..... .

a. tidy b. messy c. ugly d. clever

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How does Lilly go to school when it is sunny ?

.....

4. Where does Lilly eat her lunch ?

.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Shady and his dad invited Asser to the park. *(Cairo - West Nasr City 2025)* [.....]
2. Asser liked to play the guitar. *(Menoufia - Ashmoun 2024)* [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions :

1. How did Asser feel about his concert ?

.....

2. What did Mayar listen to in Grandma's yard ? *(Giza - October 2024)*

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nancy said that the bridge ..... collapsed. *(Dakahlia - West Mansoura 2025)*
   a. have b. has c. had d. having
2. Music club usually makes ..... relaxed. *(Sohag - Tema 2025)*
   a. me b. I c. his d. they
3. Brave people ..... help others. *(Luxor 2024)*
   a. never b. always c. aren't d. don't
4. Tennis ..... you healthy and happy. *(Beni Suef - Nasser 2024)*
   a. makes b. make c. making d. to make

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. does - the doctor - on - What - the bite - put ? *(Cairo - Al Sahel 2025)*

.....

2. roofs - Green - nature - bring - a city - into. *(Alexandria - Al-Gomrok 2024)*

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your school

Guiding elements:

- How do you go to school ?
- When does your school start ?
- Where do you study science ?
- What is your playground like ?

.....

(Port Said - English supervision 2024 / Giza - Warraq 2025)

Scanned with CamScanner



تنويه

- علامة (SB) تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة (AB) تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التدريبات

UNIT 4

We can make a difference !

يمكننا إحداث فرق !

Aims of Unit Four : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة :

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- describe myself and my friends. - أصف نفسى وأصدقائى.
- understand and use reported questions. - افهم واستخدم الأسئلة في الكلام الغير مباشر.
- listen to and give opinions. - استمع وأعطى آراء.
- understand and use noun suffixes. - افهم واستخدم المقاطع المضافة لنهاية الأسماء.
- understand and use the superlative form of adjectives. - أفهم وأستخدم صيغة التفضيل من الصفات.
- read and understand a play. - أقرأ وأفهم مسرحية.
- take part in a play. - أشترك فى مسرحية.
- write a detailed personal profile. - أكتب ملف شخصى مفصل.
- read and understand a story. - أقرأ وأفهم قصة.

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 1&2

- Why we're all special
- Language

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

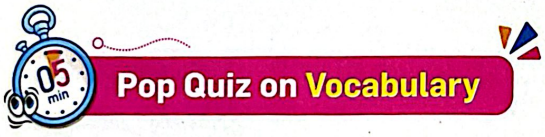
glasses	نظارة	expressions	تعبيرات
braces	تقويم الأسنان (دعامات للأسنان)	curly hair	شعر مجعد
wheelchair	كرسى متحرك	straight hair	شعر مستقيم
hearing aid	سماعة الأذن	mean = unkind	بخيل / قاس
sign language	لغة الإشارة	different	مختلف
lip-reading	قراءة الشفاه	text messages	رسائل نصية

• Extra vocabulary

hearing difficulties	صعوبات السمع	creative	مبدع
laugh	يضحك	invite	يدعو
guess	يخمن	forehead	الجبهة (مقدمة الرأس)
quiet noises	أصوات هادئة	press	يضغط
loud noises	أصوات صاخبة	boring	ممل
sporty	رياضى		

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

wear braces	يضع تقويم الأسنان	[be] able to + inf.	قادر على
communicate with	يتواصل مع	make a difference	يحدث فرق
do American sign language	يقوم بأداء لغة الإشارة الأمريكية		





▸ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. We are not the same; we are ..... .
   a. difficult b. boring c. different d. lazy
2. Ali is ..... because he always makes fun of his classmates.
   a. kind b. unkind c. clever d. creative
3. There are many ways to communicate with people who have hearing ..... .
   a. classes b. differences c. abilities d. difficulties

• **Did you know ?**

• Some people can read with their fingers! Louis Braille invented the Braille writing system when he was only fifteen !

بعض الأشخاص يستطيعون القراءة بإستخدام اصابعهم! قام لويس برايل باختراع طريقة برايل للكتابة عندما كان يبلغ من العمر الخامسة عشر فقط !

Scanned with CamScanner

4. The life would be ..... if we were all the same. I don't like the idea.
a. amazing b. boring c. fun d. exciting

5. I couldn't see well yesterday because I forgot my ..... .
a. lunchbox b. eraser c. glasses d. braces

6. My sister wears ..... to make her teeth straight.
a. glasses b. braces c. necklaces d. earrings

7. Omar uses a/an ..... because he can't walk.
a. pencil case b. wheelchair c. knife d. armchair

8. The old man has problems with hearing, so he has a/an ..... .
a. wheelchair b. brace c. hearing aid d. armchair

9. Her hair isn't ....., it's straight.
a. brown b. curly c. black d. dark

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Why we are all special	different to	We are different to each other.
	glasses	Waleed wears glasses.
	braces	Injy wears braces to make her teeth straight.
	wheelchair	Amal uses a wheelchair because she can't walk.
	hearing aid	Amina has a hearing aid because she has hearing difficulties.
	look after	It's important to look after each other.
	important	We are all important.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Pop Quiz
تدرب
05 min
على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Why we're all special by Reem

Our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other ?"

That's easy ! Asser is taller than everyone else. I'm short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Waleed wears glasses and Injy wears **braces**[1] to make her teeth straight. Amal uses a **wheelchair**[2] because she cannot walk. Amina has a **hearing aid**[3] because she has

[1] تقويم الأسنان | [2] كرسى متحرك | [3] سماعة الأذن



Mrs Mona teaching our class

Scanned with CamScanner

hearing difficulties. We have different families, too - I have three sisters, but my best friend Amal has two brothers !

Then, Mrs Mona asked us to tell our friend what makes them **special**[4]. I told Amal I love the way she helps me with math ! And Amal told me she loves the way I make her laugh.

Mrs Mona said, "What would it be like if we were all the **same**[5] ?"

"It would be **boring**[6]," said Sherif.

"Yes," said Sally, "it would be really boring."

"And imagine if everyone was good at the same things," said Mrs Mona.

"It wouldn't be very exciting," I said.

"It's good that everyone is different," said Mrs Mona. "Some of us have curly hair, and some have straight hair. Some of us are good at music, and others are good at sports." Everyone agreed.

"It's important to look after each other. We shouldn't be **unkind**[7] to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone - we are all important," said Mrs Mona.

"What should we do if someone is being mean at school ?" asked Inji. "Someone was unkind to Tarek because he can't see well."

"Always tell me, or another teacher," said Mrs Mona.

"At school we help each other."

Today, our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Edwards to come and talk to us in class. Mr Edwards told us about the best ways to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties.

First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning !

Then, Mr Edwards asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think ! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear loud noises. Mr Edwards said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

Next, Mr Edwards asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Adam said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Alex said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

Then, Mr Edwards told us about a really clever way to communicate! Can you guess what it is ?

III Language

Reported questions الأسئلة فى الكلام غير المباشر

When we report questions, we usually change the tense and word order, and remove the word do , does, or did when necessary.

1

Yes / No question → السؤال بـ "هل"

◀ يتم تحويل السؤال بـ «هل» كالآتى :

١. يتم استخدام فعل القول asked / wondered / wanted to know فى صيغة السؤال.

٢. يتم حذف الأقواس ونربط بـ "if / whether" بمعنى إذا / لو إذا كان السؤال بـ "هل".

٣. يتم تغيير الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.

٤. تتغير الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضى كما سبق شرحه فى الجملة الخبرية.

ex. 1. "Have you ever been to Japan, Maha ?", asked Nora.
- Nora asked Maha if she had ever been to Japan.

2. "Do you hear lots of sounds outside ?"
- He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside.

2

Wh-Question → السؤال بأداة استفهام

◀ يتم تحويل السؤال فى صيغة الكلام المباشر إلى غير مباشر كالآتى :

١. يتم استخدام فعل القول "asked / wondered / wanted to know" فى صيغة السؤال.

٢. تحذف الأقواس ونربط بنفس أداة الاستفهام الموجودة.

٣. بعد أداة الاستفهام نقوم بترتيب الجملة (الفاعل + الفعل .....).

٤. نحذف علامة الاستفهام ونضع نقطة فى نهاية الجملة بعد تحويل الضمائر والأزمنة.

ex. 1. - Laila asked , "Where is Ali ?".
- Laila asked where Ali was.

2. - Ashraf asked me , "When can we meet ?"
- Ashraf asked me (wanted to know) when we could meet.

لاحـظ أن :

• حذف الفعل المساعد (do/does) وتحويل الفعل الأساسى إلى الماضى.

ex. * Sarah asked me, "What do you want ?"
- Sarah asked me what I wanted.

راجع جدول تحويلات الضمائر في الوحدة السابقة

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed ..... me where the book was. *(Sharkia - Mashtoul 2025)*
   a. ask b. asked c. asking d. asks
2. Dina asked me ..... I had a mobile phone. *(Luxor – Esna 2025)*
   a. what b. but c. if d. so
3. The doctor asked me if I ..... see all the shapes.
   a. can b. could c. have d. do
4. She asked me if I ..... some cookies.
   a. want b. wanted c. wants d. to want
5. He asked if we ..... the results of the exam.
   a. knew b. know c. knows d. known
6. Talia asked her sister what she ..... doing.
   a. will b. is c. was d. have
7. "Where ..... you live ?" Noha asked Salma.
   a. does b. do c. have d. had
8. They asked him what he ..... eaten.
   a. had b. have c. has d. having
9. She asked me where I ..... .
   a. am b. were c. is d. was
10. Tarek asked if Hend ..... sending text messages.
    a. like b. likes c. liked d. like to
11. Wael ..... Yara if she could hear the bird.
    a. asks b. asked c. asking d. ask
12. She asked me if ..... worked from home.
    a. we b. her c. I d. his
13. The officer asked me who ..... the bag.
    a. finding b. finds c. found d. find
14. Mrs Elham asked me if I ..... to the library.
    a. was going b. am going c. will go d. go

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

تدريب تلقائى
يهدف لإتقان
القواعد اللغوية

1. She asked her if ..... [her] could do everything with the tablet.
2. She asked her mother if she ..... [is] going to the market.
3. The old man asked ..... [I] what time the train left.
4. His father asked him where he ..... [go] after school.
5. They asked him when he ..... [can] finish his project.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 19 On Lessons 1&2



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة]

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How old is Hani ?

.....

2. What color is Hani's hair ?

.....

3. What subject is he good at ?

.....

4. What sport do they play ?

.....

(Behira - Rosseta 2024)

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

Why - special - When - has - families

Reem : Do you think we are all different ?

Yara : Yes. Everyone [1] ..... different things.

Reem : [2] ..... are we all different ?

Yara : Because we are from different [3] ..... .

Reem : Do you think being different is a good thing ?

Yara : Yes. In my opinion, that makes us [4] ..... . *(Beni Suef - Nasser 2025)*

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Our teacher invited an interesting person to talk to us today. His name was Mr Edwards and he told us about the best ways to communicate with people with hearing difficulties. First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking. Then, Mr Edwards asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think ! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear <u>loud</u> noises. Mr Edwards said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises. He asked us what ways we communicate with each other. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Adam said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Alex said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "<u>loud</u>" is the opposite of "..... ".

a. fast b. quiet c. high d. modern

Scanned with CamScanner

2. The text aims to help us ..... with people with hearing difficulties.
a. ask b. learn c. communicate d. write

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who invited Mr Edwards ?
.....

4. What was Alex's favorite way to communicate ?
.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali asked Hana ..... she liked his new glasses.
a. if b. what c. and d. but

2. He asked what would ..... if you got up early.
a. happen b. happens c. happened d. happening

3. The students ..... where people learned sign language.
a. told b. asked c. said d. say

4. Mom asked me how the exam ..... . *(Cairo – Mostaqbal 2025)*
a. will b. is c. does d. was

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to – we – How – different – are – each other ? *(Sharkia - West Zagazig 2025)*
.....

2. each - look – It's – other – after – important – to.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

We're all different

Guiding elements:

• same • straight • look after • important

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

(Fayoum - Etsa 2024 / Sohag – Maragha 2025)

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 3&4

Amazing David
Can I work with you ?

I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

prosthetic arm	ذراع اصطناعية	poster	ملصق - إعلان
comic books	مجلة مصورة	movable elbow	كوع متحرك
advertisement	إعلان	bricks	مكعبات - قوالب
kindness	عطف	disability	إعاقة

• Extra vocabulary

drawing	الرسم	prices	الأسعار
Spain	أسبانيا	bus ride	رحلة بالحافلة
cheaply	بسعر رخيص	TV channel	قناة تلفزيونية
university	جامعة	confident	واثق
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	amazing	مدهش - مذهل
tropical	استوائى	website	موقع إلكتروني
fantastic	رائع	lovely	جميل
emotions	مشاعر	bakery	مخبز

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make animations	يصنع رسوم متحركة	get into groups	ينقسم إلى مجموعات
work with	يعمل مع	researching information	البحث عن معلومات
good at + (n. /inf. + ing)	جيد فى	find out	يكتشف



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



▸ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. After the accident, she has prosthetic arm with a movable ..... .
   a. ear b. elbow c. eye d. mouth
2. I like reading ..... because they are funny.
   a. video games b. robots c. comic books d. cartoons

Scanned with CamScanner

3. Having a/an ..... arm helps him with his disability.
a. weak b. prosthetic c. unhealthy d. bad

4. Be ..... and stop worrying about everything around you.
a. nervous b. confident c. weak d. mean

5. My brother is good at ..... animations, he is creative.
a. reading b. joining c. painting d. making

6. The girl showed her ..... when she helped the old woman.
a. kind b. kindly c. kindness d. unkind

7. I always buy fresh bread and cakes from this ..... .
a. bakery b. garage c. office d. apartment

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Amazing David	prosthetic arm	David built a prosthetic arm with plastic bricks.
	movable elbow	He designed it with a movable elbow.
	comic book	David's dad wrote a comic book about David.
	disabilities	It helps people understand more about disabilities.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة



Amazing David! AB

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a **prosthetic arm**[1] with **plastic bricks**[2] because he only had one arm. He designed it with a **movable elbow**[3] and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic book about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about **disabilities**[4]. Prosthetic arms and legs can be difficult to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks. After university, he wants to create cheap prosthetic arms and legs for people.

[1] ذراع اصطناعية [2] قوالب بلاستيكية [3] كوع متحرك [4] إعاقات

Scanned with CamScanner

SB

Mrs Parker : OK, everyone, I want you to get into groups to make **posters**[1] about animals that live in **tropical rainforests**[2]. It should be an **advertisement**[3] for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – **kindness**[4] is important.



Grade 6 children working on a poster

Tyler : Lewis, Alice, Logan, can I work with you ?

Lewis : Oh no, sorry. We're already working with Ryan. Ryan, come here!

Ryan : I'm coming !

Tyler : Lucas and Paige, can I work with you ?

Lucas : No, we're working with Matilda.

Tyler starts to feel a bit sad and goes to talk to Mrs Parker.

Tyler : I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Parker. Everyone has their group.

Mrs Parker : Oh dear! Of course we can find you someone. Let's go and talk to Eliza. Eliza, who are you working with in your group ?

Eliza : I'm working with Owen and Jane, but we need someone else.

Mrs Parker : Excellent! Here's Tyler !

Eliza : Hi, Tyler! What would you like to do for the poster ?

Tyler : I'd love to draw the pictures !

Eliza : That's fantastic! I'm good at writing, Owen is good at **design**[5], and Jane is great at researching information and finding photos. If you can draw pictures, then we will make a very good team !

A little later.....

Mrs Parker : These posters are beautiful. Who did these lovely pictures ?

Owen : That was Tyler, Mrs Parker – he really worked hard to make our poster.

Tyler smiles and looks very proud[6].

(1) ملصقات
(2) غابات استوائية مطيرة
(3) إعلان
(4) عطف
(5) تصميم
(6) فخور

AB

Reem : Would you both like to come shopping with me? I want to buy a present for my mom.

Mazen: Oh, that's nice, Reem. Is it her birthday ?

Reem : No, it isn't. I just want to buy her a present for being the best mom. I'm going to use my birthday money from last month.

Talia : That's a great idea. My mom always says, "kindness is important", and that's a kind thing to do. Your mom will love a present. What do you want to buy her ?

Scanned with CamScanner

Reem : I was thinking of buying her some special cookies, or cakes. I saw an advertisement for the new bakery in town. They make really special cakes and cookies. They put them in a white box with some pretty paper.

Mazen: That would be a great present, Reem. Where's the bakery ? Let's go there now.

Reem : Hmm ... I'm not sure. It's called Cake Creations. They probably have a website.

Talia : OK. If we look at their website, we could get their address and some more information - like what kind of cakes they make and the prices.

Mazen: Great. I'll look at my phone and find the website.

Reem : Thanks Mazen.

III Language

Noun Suffixes

Sometimes nouns have a different ending called a suffix.

أحيانًا تنتهى الأسماء بنهايات مختلفة تسمى لاحقة.

▸ **The suffix :** اللاحقة

The suffix is a letter or group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word :

اللاحقة : هى إضافة حرف أو مجموعة من الأحرف فى نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

Verb + –ment ⟶ noun

Verb			(noun)	
advertise	يعلن	-ment	advertisement	إعلان
agree	يوافق	-ment	agreement	اتفاق
entertain	يسلى	-ment	entertainment	تسلية
improve	يحسن	-ment	improvement	تحسين - تنمية

Adjective + –ness ⟶ noun

Adjective			(noun)	
ill	مريض	-ness	illness	المرض
kind	طيب - عطوف	-ness	kindness	لطف - عطف
happy	سعيد	-ness	happiness	السعادة
sad	حزين	-ness	sadness	حزن

Scanned with CamScanner

Verb + –ion ⟶ noun
(other changes might be needed

Verb			(noun)	
inform	يخبر - يعلم	-ion	information	معلومات
relax	يسترخى	-ion	relaxation	استرخاء
transform	يحول	-ion	transformation	تحويل
create	يبدع -يبتكر	-ion	creation	ابتكار - إبداع
transport	ينقل	-ion	transportation	وسائل النقل

IV Speaking

Asking for opinions السؤال عن الرأى

What do you think about ... ? ما رأيك فى ... ؟

What about .... + [noun/inf. + ing] ?
ماذا عن ... ؟

What do you think ? ماذا تعتقد ... ؟

Giving opinions إبداء الرأى

In my opinion, ... فى رأيى

To me, ...
بالنسبة لى ....

I think that .... أعتقد أن



What do you think about reading comic books ?
ما رأيك فى قراءة المجلات المصورة ؟

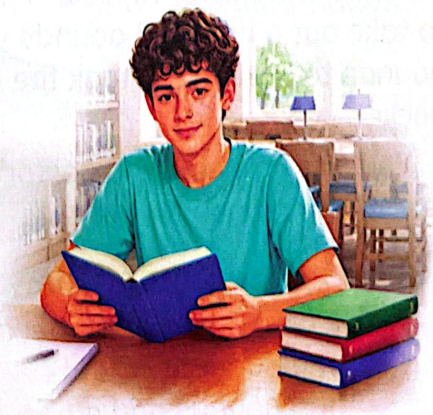
In my opinion, it is interesting.
أعتقد أنها شيقة.



A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط



Scanned with CamScanner

Test 20 On Lessons 3 & 4



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is your best friend ?

.....

2. Where does Noha live ?

.....

3. What is Noha's favorite hobby ?

.....

4. How often does Noha write you a letter ?

.....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

understand - arm - book - movable - foot

David is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a prosthetic (1) ..... with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a (2) ..... elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic (3) ..... about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people (4) ..... more about disabilities. Prosthetic arms and legs can be difficult to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks.

(Ismailia – El Qassasseen 2025)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A doctor was called to treat a rich man's son. He was skillful enough to save the boy. The rich man was very **grateful** to the doctor. To show his thanks to the doctor, he offered him a small but beautiful bag. When the doctor saw the bag, he became very angry as he had expected a large sum of money. He said angrily, "A bag is a suitable present for a friend, but I'm a doctor and I need money to get what I need."

The father quietly asked the doctor to tell him about the money he wanted. The doctor replied, "Fifty pounds". The rich man opened the bag to take out a hundred pounds which he had placed inside. He handed fifty pounds to the doctor, took the bag and placed the rest of the money in his pocket.

You may imagine the doctor's sorrow (حزن) when the boy's father kept the rest of the money for himself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The doctor was sorry because he lost ..... .

a. one hundred pounds
b. fifty pounds
c. fifty pounds and a bag
d. nothing

Scanned with CamScanner

2. The meaning of the underlined word "**grateful**" is ..... .
a. thankful b. impolite c. helpful d. unkind

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why was the rich man grateful to the doctor ?
.....

4. How much money did the doctor want ?
.....

(Minya - Minya 2024)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Kindness and ..... are very important in our life.
a. happy b. happily c. happiness d. unhappy
2. The company ..... its new product on social media.
a. advertising b. advertised c. advertisement d. to advertise
3. It's important to be ..... to your classmates.
a. kind b. kindness c. kindly d. unkind
4. Can you give me some ..... about this book?
a. inform b. information c. informs d. informing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. built – plastic – He – with – arm – a prosthetic - bricks.

(Port Said – North Port Said 2025)

.....

2. David – very – In my – clever – opinion, – is .
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Working together on a poster

Guiding elements:

• design • kindness • information

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Scanned with CamScanner



Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSONS 1&2

hearing aid	..... رسائل نصية
lip-reading	..... يضحك
hearing difficulties	..... شعر مجعد
glasses	..... بخيل
braces	..... يخمن
expressions	..... رياضى
different	..... مبدع
sign language	..... يضغط
wheelchair	..... أصوات صاخبة

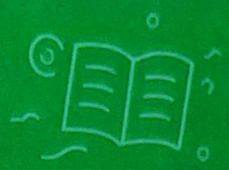
LESSONS 3&4

prosthetic arm	..... إعلان
comic books	..... كوع متحرك
kindness	..... جامعة
bricks	..... غابة مطيرة
disability	..... مشاعر
poster	..... وائق
tropical	..... موقع إلكترونى
TV channel	..... الرسم
prices	..... رحلة بالحافلة

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 5&6

- Language
- Literature Corner



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

herd	قطيع	leader	قائد	route	مسار / طريق
hunter	صياد	roar	يزأر (يصدر صوتًا عاليًا)	praise	يمدح
net	شبكة	glider	طائرة شراعية	crack	يتشقق / يتصدع
air traffic control	مراقبة الحركة الجوية	hero	بطل	co-pilot	مساعد طيار

• Extra vocabulary

needs	احتياجات	empty	فارغ	engines	مُحركات
flying	طيران	shocked	مصدوم	injured	مُصاب
passengers	ركاب	powerful	قوى	power	قوة / طاقة
land	يهبط	flock	سرب / مجموعة		
enormous	ضخم جدًا	rescue	ينقذ		

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
leave يترك	left	left
fly يطير	flew	flown
hit يضرب / يصطدم بـ	hit	hit
take off تقلع (الطائرة)	took off	taken off

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

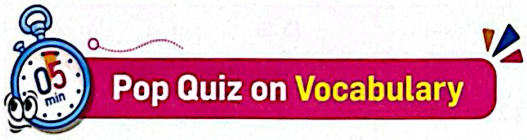
Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
leader	• the most powerful person or animal in a group. • the most important person or animal in a group, who controls the others
herd	• a group of animals that live together, such as horses, cows, deer, or elephants

Scanned with CamScanner

hunter	• a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals • a person that kills animals for food or sport
roar	• to make a very loud noise • a loud sound made by lions and other large animals
route	• a path or a way to go somewhere • a way that you follow to get from one place to another
praise	positive words you use to show you think someone has done something good
air traffic control	a service which gives information to pilots while they are flying
glider	something a person can fly in which doesn't have an engine
crack	when something breaks along thin lines
co-pilot	a second pilot who helps the pilot to fly a plane

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- get caught in nets	يقع فى الشِباك	- take control of	يتولى السيطرة على
- a flock of birds	سرب من الطيور	- climb onto	يصعد إلى
- a herd of	قطيع من	- on board	على متن الطائرة





▸ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Everyone ..... the athlete after winning the competition.
   a. praised b. cracked c. crashed d. restared
2. The fishermen use their ..... to catch a lot of fish.
   a. nails b. axes c. nets d. camps
3. The firefighters arrived quickly to ..... the people from the building.
   a. crack b. rescue c. praise d. land
4. The ..... is a person who tries to catch wild animals.
   a. leader b. plumber c. farmer d. hunter
5. Many ..... were waiting for the train.
   a. passengers b. pilots c. birds d. engineers
6. A ..... is a group of elephants.
   a. festival b. competition c. race d. herd

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The elephants and the mice	near a lake	A herd of elephants and hundreds of mice lived happily together.
	route	The elephants changed their route to the lake and hurt many mice.
	got caught	A few weeks later, the elephants got caught in nets left by hunters and could not move.
	mice - net	The mice bit through the nets until the elephants could get out.
	difference	The elephant queen thanked the mouse king and learned that everyone can make a difference.
The Hero of the Hudson	land	He decided to land on the Hudson River.
	passengers	Sully told the passengers to climb onto the plane's wings.
	boats – rescue	Boats arrived to rescue the passengers.
	hero - water	Sully was a hero for landing the plane on water.
	praised-hero	Sully was praised for staying on the plane until every passenger was safe.

2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة



The elephants and the mice



Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived in India. Their **leader**[1], the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, the elephants liked to swim in the lake.

Hundreds of mice lived in an old, empty village near the lake. Their leader, the king, was kind. The elephants and the mice lived happily together.

[1] قائد

Scanned with CamScanner

But, one day, the elephants changed their **route**[2] to the lake. Now they walked on a **path**[3] too close to the mice. Many elephants didn't see the mice. They walked on them and hurt them.

The mouse king decided to meet the elephant queen. When he explained the problem to her, she was **shocked**[4] and agreed to use a different route.

"Thank you for respecting our needs," said the mouse king, "One day, I hope we can help you if you need it."

The elephant queen smiled, but thought, "Why would **powerful**[5] animals like elephants need help from little mice ?"

A few weeks later, some **hunters**[6] left nets for the elephants. The next day, when the elephants went to the lake, they got caught in the nets. They couldn't move, and they **roared**[7] loudly ! The mice heard the noise and came running. They bit through the nets until the elephants could get out!

The next day, the elephant queen visited the mouse king and said, "Thank you so much! You saved our elephants from the hunters! You showed us that everyone, from the biggest to the smallest, can **make a difference**[8]."

The mouse king was the happiest and proudest mouse in the village.

[2] طريق
[3] ممر
[4] مصدوم
[5] قوى
[6] صيادين
[7] يصدر صوت عالى (يزأر)
[8] يحدث فارقًا

The Hero of the Hudson



Flying is probably the safest way to travel. But what happens when something goes wrong ?

In 2009, a plane took off from LaGuardia airport in New York on a cold January afternoon. Just three minutes later, a flock of large birds hit both engines.

The engines stopped. At the time, the co-pilot, Jeff Skiles, was controlling the plane. He had only just finished training to fly this kind of plane. The main pilot, Sully Sullenberger, tried to restart the engines. When he couldn't do this, he took control of the plane.

Sully called air traffic control and told them that he wanted to return to LaGuardia airport. Then he decided that the engines did not have enough power to turn the plane around. Air traffic control told Sully to fly the plane to a nearer airport. They were very surprised by his reply: "We're going to be in the Hudson".

Scanned with CamScanner

The Hudson is the name of the river which runs through New York. The plane was flying above an enormous city and Sully was worried it would crash before it reached the airport.

Without power in the engines, Sully had to fly the plane like a glider towards the river.

The plane landed on the Hudson River at about 240 kilometres an hour. It landed so hard that many of the plane's windows cracked.

Amazingly, they had landed safely, but the plane started to fill with extremely cold water. Sully told the passengers to climb onto the plane's wings.

Just four minutes later, boats arrived to rescue the passengers. Seventy-eight people were injured, but incredibly, no one was seriously hurt.

Everyone said that Sully was a hero for landing the plane on water. This is not something that pilots are trained to do. His experience probably saved the lives of everyone on board. He was also praised for staying on the plane until every passenger was safe.

III Language

Superlatives adjectives صفات التفضيل

- When we want to compare more than two things, we can use superlative adjectives.

• عندما نريد أن نقارن بين أكثر من شيئين، نستخدم صيغة التفضيل.

تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :

1 Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

١. يُضاف [the...+ est] إلى الصفة القصيرة :

the + short adj. + est

- fast → the fastest - old → the oldest

.....

٢. يُضاف [the ... + st] إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e):

- large → the largest - close → the closest

.....

٣. يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف [the...+est] إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- big → the biggest - thin → the thinnest

.....

٤. الصفات المنتهية بحرف [y] مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول [y] إلى [the... + iest] :

- happy → the happiest

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :

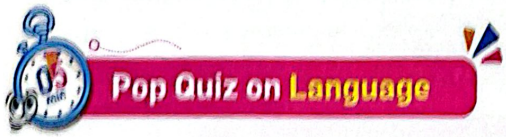
the most الأكثر / least الأقل + long adj. صفة طويلة

- beautiful → the most beautiful الأكثر جمالاً

ex. - Elephants are the most powerful animals in India.

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى) عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين :

1 Adjective		2 Superlative	
bad	سيئ	the worst	الأسوأ
good	جيد	the best	الأفضل
little	قليل (الكمية)	the least	الأقل (كمية)
more + adj.	أكثر من	the most + adj.	الأكثر



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. January is often the ..... month in Egypt. *(Al-Beheira – Bandar Kafr Al-Dawwar 2025)*
   a. colder b. cold c. cold as d. coldest
2. Hatem is ..... student in the class. *(Alexandria – Montaza 2025)*
   a. tall b. the tallest c. taller than d. the tall
3. This is the ..... chef at the restaurant.
   a. good as b. better c. best d. good
4. It was the ..... vacation - it rained the whole time.
   a. worst b. worse c. bad d. badly
5. What is the ..... difficult sport ?
   a. some b. more c. most d. many
6. Mom is the ..... person in my family.
   a. kind b. kinder c. kindest d. most kind
7. What is the ..... animal on land ?
   a. fast as b. fast c. fastest d. faster
8. What is the ..... subject in school ?
   a. most interesting b. interesting as
   c. more interesting d. as interesting
9. Who is the ..... person in your family ?
   a. older b. oldest c. old d. as old

Test 21 On Lessons 5 & 6



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة)

• 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did a herd of elephants live ?

.....

2. Why did the mouse king visit the elephant queen ?

.....

3. How did the mice help the elephants when they were caught in the nets ?

.....

4. What lesson can we learn from the story ?

.....

(Menoufia - Shebin El Kom 2025)

• 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

meet – mice – shocked – route – empty

Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived near a lake in India. Hundreds of mice lived in an old [1] ..... village nearby. One day, the elephants changed their [2] ..... to the lake and walked on the mice, hurting many of them. The mouse king met the elephant queen and explained the problem. She was [3] ..... and agreed to use a different route. A few weeks later, hunters left nets for the elephants and they got caught. The [4] ..... came running and bit through the nets. The elephants got out and thanked the mice. Everyone learned that everyone can make a difference.

• 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In 2009, a plane took off from LaGuardia airport in New York. Three minutes later, a **flock** of birds hit both engines, causing them to stop working. Captain Sully Sullenberger took control of the plane and realized that he could not return to the airport safely. He decided to land the plane on the Hudson River. The landing was successful, although the plane started filling with very cold water. The passengers climbed onto the wings and waited for help. Rescue boats arrived within minutes. Everyone survived the accident, and Sully was praised as a hero for saving the lives of all passengers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word " **flock**" has the same meaning as " ..... ".

a. power b. group c. route d. path

Scanned with CamScanner

2. A flock of birds hit both ..... of the plane.

a. wings b. windows c. engines d. passengers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Captain Sully land the plane ?

.....

4. Why was Captain Sully praised as a hero ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. He is the ..... student in math at my school.

a. well b. best c. good d. better

2. Lake Nasser is ..... lake in Egypt.

a. the biggest b. bigger c. biggest d. big

3. He is ..... popular player in the club.

a. most b. more c. the most d. many

4. Flying is probably the ..... way to travel.

a. safe b. safest c. safer d. safe as

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. took – the plane – The main pilot – of – control.

.....

2. did – the elephants – the mice – How – help ?

.....

6 Write a short story of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The elephants and the mice

Guiding elements:

• herd of elephants • mice • got caught

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

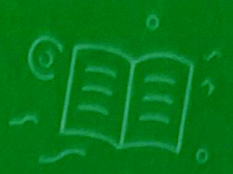
.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 7&8

- Writing a personal profile
- Story : Hana saves the day



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

hobbies هوايات	crawl يزحف / يحبو	photography تصوير
walker مشاية طبية	celebrate يحتفل	decorate يزين
physiotherapist أخصائى العلاج الطبيعى	the countryside الريف	cerebral palsy الشلل الدماغى

• Extra vocabulary

relieved مرتاح البال	braces تقويم أسنان	dentist طبيب أسنان
awesome رائع	stickers ملصقات	fresh air هواء نقى
receive يتلقى / يستلم	brain مخ	seat مقعد
thankful ممتن	snack bar مطعم الوجبات السريعة	score يسجل [هدف]

Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think يفكر	thought	thought

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
decorate	to add something to an object or place to make it look better
walker	something that people use to help them walk
crawl	to move along the ground using both arms and legs
physiotherapist	a person who helps people with injuries or disabilities

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

keen on	مهتم بـ / شغوف بـ	go for a walk	يتمشى
on the weekend,	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع،	the baby of the family	مدلل العائلة
pull himself up	يرفع نفسه إلى أعلى	turn around	يدور حول
(be) into sports	مهتم بالرياضة		

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائى
يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. To ..... is to add something to an object or place to make it look better.
   a. decorate b. crawl c. run d. start
2. Zein ..... two goals in the match.
   a. put b. moved c. scored d. smiled
3. My favorite ..... is drawing.
   a. color b. hobby c. number d. animal
4. The baby can't walk yet, so he ..... on the floor.
   a. lands b. flies c. jumps d. crawls
5. Hana uses a ..... to help her walk.
   a. walker b. bicycle c. camera d. net
6. Sarah loves ..... and takes pictures of nature.
   a. volleyball b. music c. photography d. swimming
7. We felt ..... when we found the lost child.
   a. scared b. angry c. relieved d. hungry

II Listening and Reading

1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Amber's personal profile	keen on	Amber is keen on walking with her family and friends.
	photography	Amber is into photography.
	music	She loves listening to music from her country and all over the world.
	mall	On the weekend, Amber loves going to the mall.
	dentist	She'd like to be a dentist.
Hana saves the day	walker	Hana's new walker arrived.
	decorate	Hana and her friend decorate the new walker.
	fresh air	It's important for Hana to get fresh air.
	friends - park	Hana met her friends at the park.
	cerebral palsy	Hana's brain works different. She has cerebral palsy.
	little boy	A woman lost her little boy in the park.
	crawl	He can't walk. He crawls along the ground.
	thankful	His mom was thankful that Hana found him.
	relieved	They were all so relieved and happy.
	celebrate	They had an ice cream to celebrate.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz
05 min
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Amber's personal profile



Hi everybody!
How are things ?
My name's Amber. I'm eleven, and I live in New York. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends.
I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family !
I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.
I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world.
As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club, and we have games about once a month.
On the weekend, I love going to the mall with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.
I think a lot about the future, and I think I'd like to be a dentist, like my dad. What about you ? What do you look like ? What are your hobbies ? Write and tell me about yourself !

Hana saves the day SB



Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. One day, after school, she called me.
"My new walker arrived. Do you want to come over and help me decorate it?"
Excited, I ran to her house. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new walker every year. When the new one arrives, we decorate it.
Hana's favorite color is green, so we painted it green and decorated it with stars and stickers. It looked awesome.

Scanned with CamScanner

"What should we do now, Reem ?" asked Hana.

"I think we should go to the park," I said. We often go for a walk to the park after school. Hana's physiotherapist, Donia, says it's important for Hana to get fresh air and exercise her legs so they get stronger.

At the park, we met our friends. They said Hana's new walker looked great. Our new friend, Rasha, asked Hana why she needed a walker.

"Well," she said," when I was born, something happened to my brain and it works differently to some other people's. My dad calls it my special brain. The name for what I have is cerebral palsy."

"Can you do everything with the walker?" asked Rasha.

"No, for eating meals I have a special chair at home, and for going out in the car, I have a special seat - it's really comfortable."

Then we walked a little more with our friends. Hana was walking behind with Nadine, our other friend. Suddenly, a woman came running towards us, and she was crying.

"I can't see my little boy!" she said. "I turned around to get him a snack from my bag, and now I can't see him!"

"How old is your little boy ?" asked Rasha.

"Only one. He can't walk, he crawls along the ground."

So we all looked in the grass, and the snack bar, but we didn't see him. Then, I noticed there was a group of trees behind where the woman was sitting.

"Let's look over there!" I said. "And where's Hana ?"

Nobody knew. We all ran over to the trees, quite scared because it was near the road.

"Adam!" shouted the woman,and she stopped crying.

There was Adam, pulling himself up on Hana's walker, and Hana was talking to him quietly. His mom was so thankful that Hana found him. We were all so relieved and happy, and we had an ice cream to celebrate!

What is Adam's disability ? AB



It was Thursday afternoon and for Adam, this was the best day of the week. Adam went to basketball club after school on a Thursday. Today was special. His mom was waiting for him at the school entrance.

"I've brought you some water and a snack, Adam. You should eat something before you play," she said.

"Thanks, Mom, I forgot about eating," said Adam.

"That's because you're so excited," his mom said, smiling. "Come on, Adam, let's get in the car."

Fifteen minutes later, they arrived at the sports center. Adam saw his friend Brooke, who was waiting for him at the entrance.

Scanned with CamScanner

"Hi, Adam. Are you excited about the game ?" he shouted.

"Hi, Brooke! Yes! It's going to be the most exciting game ever," Adam said. He waited for his mom as she took out his wheelchair from the back of the car.

"Look, Mom," said Adam. "There's Mr Baker, my physiotherapist. He has come to watch the game. Let's say hello."

Adam started playing wheelchair basketball six months ago and this was his first game as the captain of the team. The game started well and Adam's team was winning, until the last five minutes, when the other team scored two baskets. This was serious. There were three minutes until the end of the game. Then two minutes...

Suddenly, Colin caught the ball and threw it to Brooke. Brooke quickly moved past two players and threw the ball to Adam. There were 60 seconds to go ... Adam caught the ball and stopped his wheelchair. Thirty seconds .... he put his arms above his head. Twenty seconds ... then he threw the ball high in the air ... and it dropped into the middle of the basketball net ! Everyone cheered loudly !

Adam's team won the match! What a great day !

III Writing

Personal profile : ملف شخصى :

Tips to write a personal profile : نصائح لكتابة ملف شخصى :

1. Start with a greeting : Hi / Hey — ١. ابدأ بالتحية مثل : Hi / Hey
2. Give your name, your age, and where you live. — ٢. اعط اسمك، عمرك وأين تعيش.
3. Describe what you look like. — ٣. صف كيف تبدو (مظهرك الخارجى).
4. Tell people about your hobbies : — ٤. أخبر الناس عن هواياتك :
   - I'm into ... / I'm keen on ... / My favorite hobby is ...
   - أنا أحب ..... / أنا متحمس لـ ..... / هوايتى المفضلة هى .....
5. Ask them to write to you : — ٥. اطلب منهم أن يكتبوا لك :
   - I can't wait to hear from you ! — - لا أطيق الانتظار حتى أسمع منك !
   - Write and tell me ! — - اكتب وأخبرنى !

Writing rule

Use a comma "," before "and, but and so" when the sentences contains two clauses.

استخدم الفاصلة السفلية "," قبل أدوات الربط "but - so - and" عندما تحتوى الجمل على عبارتين.

ex. - Adel doesn't play sport, but he likes watching sport on TV.
- Samira wants to be an engineer, and one day she'd like to live and work in Cairo.
- Tarek is keen on swimming, so he goes swimming three times a week.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 22 On Lessons 7 & 8



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة فى أختبار الوحدة)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How old is Amber ?

.....

2. Where does Amber live ?

.....

3. What color is Amber's hair ?

.....

4. How many sisters does Amber have ?

.....

(Menoufia - Shebin El Kom 2025)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

dentist – countryside – photography – volleyball – drawing

Nada is keen on walking with her family and friends. The [1] ..... near where she lives is really amazing. She's into [2] ..... . She likes taking photos of all the beautiful things she sees in the countryside. As well this, she's really into sports. She plays [3] ..... at her local club, and they have games about once a month. She thinks a lot about the future, and she thinks she'd like to be a [4] ....., like her dad.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Omar. I am eleven years old and I live in Cairo. I go to Al Noor School. I have short black hair and brown eyes. I enjoy playing football with my friends after school. I am also interested in reading adventure stories and listening to music. On weekends, I visit my grandparents and spend time with my family. In the future, I would like to be an engineer because I like building and designing things.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Omar lives in ..... with his family.
   a. Cairo b. London c. Paris d. Rome
2. He has short black ..... and brown eyes.
   a. ears b. hair c. hands d. legs

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What are Omar's hobbies ?

.....

4. What does Omar want to be in the future ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My brother was the ..... singer in the school concert.
   a. better b. best c. good d. good as
2. Yara asked me ..... I knew how to use sign language.
   a. if b. did c. do d. what
3. Today is the ..... day of the year.
   a. hot b. hotter c. hottest d. hot as
4. The good news brought ..... to the whole family.
   a. happy b. happier c. happiness d. unhappy

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. am – on – I – family – keen – with – walking – my.

.....

2. What – Dina – like – does – look ?

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your friend

Guiding elements:

- short hair
- photography
- sports

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner



Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSONS 5&6

roar	.....	قطيع	.....
glider	.....	مسار / طريق	.....
crack	.....	صياد	.....
leader	.....	شبكة	.....
hero	.....	مساعد طيار	.....
passengers	.....	يمدح	.....

LESSONS 7&8

hobbies	.....	يزحف	.....
walker	.....	الريف	.....
photography	.....	الشلل الدماغى	.....
decorate	.....	رائع	.....
physiotherapist	.....	ملصقات	.....
celebrate	.....	طبيب أسنان	.....

- **Read and write.**

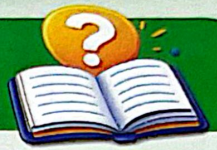
- **Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P.
.....	يترك	left	left
fly	يطير	flew	.....
.....	تقلع الطائرة	took off	taken off
think	يفكر	.....	thought
.....	يجد	found	found
meet	يقابل	met	.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Demonstrate understanding of specific details



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

1 Learn

تعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer.

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a prosthetic arm with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a movable elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic book about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about disabilities. Prosthetic arms and legs can be difficult to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks. After university, he wants to create cheap prosthetic arms and legs for people.

شرح الحل

تقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا وتستخرج الإجابة مباشرة من النص:

- ديڤيد كان له ذراع واحد.
- صنع ديڤيد أطراف صناعية رخيصة الثمن للناس.

1. David used ..... bricks to build a prosthetic arm.
   a. metal b. wood c. glass d. plastic
2. David's dad has written a comic book about ..... .
   a. inventions b. his son c. his life d. plastic
3. David wants to create cheap prosthetic arms ..... .
   a. after university b. in 2050 c. at home d. with Aguilar

2 Master

اتقن طريقة حل السؤال (متبعًا الخطوة الأولى).

Read and answer the questions.

If we were all the same, life would be boring. In Mrs Mona's class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has brown eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Waleed wears glasses. Injy wears braces to make her teeth straight. It's important to look after each other. We shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different.

1. Seleem is good at ..... .
   a. geography b. English
   c. science d. math
2. Asser has ..... eyes.
   a. blue b. black
   c. gray d. brown
3. ..... wears glasses.
   a. Mona b. Seleem
   c. Waleed d. Injy

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Writing

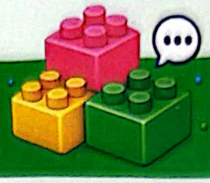


يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Your friend	**Write the meaning :** ..... طويل ..... مختلف ..... شعر مجعد ..... دعامات الأسنان ..... نظارة ..... كرسي متحرك ..... جيد فى	**Complete the sentences :** 1. We are ..... to each other. 2. He has ..... hair and black eyes. 3. He wears ..... to help him see better. 4. He wears ..... to make his teeth straight. 5. He is ..... sports.	**Write a personal profile using the sentences :** "Your friend" ....
Ways of communication	..... رسائل ..... لغة الإشارة ..... يتواصل ..... صعوبات السمع ..... هادئ ..... يسمع	1. We use many ways to ..... with each other. 2. Talking, writing ..... and phone calls are ways to communicate. 3. Some people use ..... to communicate with people who can't speak. 4. People with hearing ..... can use lip reading to communicate.	**Write a paragraph using the sentences :** "Ways of communication" ....

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1 Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Flying
   فاعل الجملة الثانية
2. She
   فاعل الجملة الرابعة



الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. has - aid - hearing - Amina - a.
2. is - safest - travel - way - Flying - the - to.
3. arrived - Boats - rescue - passengers - to - the.
4. like - would - She - be - to - dentist - a.

	١ فاعل	٢ فعل	٣ باقي الجملة.
1.	Amina		
2.			
3.			
4.	She		

2 Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. has
   فعل الجملة الأولى
2. arrived
   فعل الجملة الثالثة



الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

3 Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Do/Did

تستخدم مع:

I / we / you / they

Did/Does

تستخدم مع:

he/she/it



الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. sound - hear - What - you - every - do - day ?
2. do - communicate - school - How - you - at ?
3. did - help - elephants - How - the mice - the ?
4. he - to do - What - want - the poster - for - does ?

	١ كلمة استفهام	٢ فعل مساعد	٣ فاعل	٤ فعل	٥ باقي السؤال ؟
1.					
2.		do			
3.					
4.	What				

4 The Wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- What [ما/ماذا]: للسؤال عن شيء.
- How [كيف]: للسؤال عن الحال.



أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Review, Practice & Master
for Correction Notes



الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ.

Review راجع القاعدة وتأكد من فهمك

1 Reported questions الأسئلة فى الكلام غير المباشر	
asked / wondered / wanted to know	فعل القول مع السؤال
He asked if / whether I liked fish.	نربط بـ (if / whether) فى حالة السؤال الذى يبدأ بفعل مساعد ويأتى بعدهم فاعل ثم فعل.
2 Superlatives صيغة التفضيل	
tall ... the tallest old ... the oldest	عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين فى حالة التفضيل نضع (the) قبل الصفة القصيرة ونضيف (est).
the most / least + صفة طويلة	مع الصفات الطويلة نستخدم (the most / the least).

Practice تدرب على كيفية التعامل مع السؤال

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 Ahmed ..... (asks) me where the book was.	asked	زمن الجملة ماضى (was) لذلك يكون فعل القول ماضى.
2 Hatem is the ..... (tall) student in the class.	tallest	نضيف للصفة القصيرة (est) لوجود (the).
3 He asked if we ..... (know) the results of the exam.	knew	فعل القول ماضى (asked) لذلك يكون زمن الجملة ماضى.

Master أتقن طريقة حل السؤال

Write the reason. معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

1 Dina asked me if ..... (had I) a mobile.	I had	.....
2 What is the ..... (more) difficult sport ?	most	.....
3 She asked me if ..... (him) worked hard.	he	.....
4 Mom is ..... (kindest) person.	the kindest	.....

Write the correction. اكتب التصحيح.

1 He asked me what time the film ..... (start) .	.....	فعل القول ماضى بسيط.
2 What is the ..... (faster) animal ?	.....	وجود (the) قبل الصفة القصيرة.
3 Wael ..... (asks) Yara if she could hear the bird.	.....	زمن الجملة ماضى لذلك يكون فعل القول ماضى.
4 Elephants are the ..... (more) powerful animals.	.....	وجود (the) مع الصفة طويلة المقطع.

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Important Topics



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٨ جملة).

1 We are all special

We are all different from each other[1]. Some people are good at sports and some are good at music[2]. Everyone has special qualities[3]. Differences are important because they make life interesting[4]. If everyone were the same, life would be boring[5]. We can learn from each other and help each other[6]. Some of us have curly hair and some of us wear glasses[7]. Our differences make us special[8].

2 The elephants and the mice

A herd of elephants and hundreds of mice lived happily near a lake[9]. One day, the elephants changed their route and hurt many mice[10]. The mouse king explained the problem to the elephant queen, and she agreed to use a different route[11].

Later, some hunters left nets for the elephants[12]. The elephants got caught in the nets, but the mice bit through the nets and helped them get out[13]. The elephant queen thanked the mice because they saved the elephants from the hunters[14]. The story teaches us that everyone can make a difference[15].

3 A personal profile

Hi everybody!

I'm Malek and I'm eleven[16]. I live in Cairo and I go to El Salam School[17]. I'm in grade 6[18]. My best friends at school are Omar and Ali[19]. We're in the same class[20]. I have short dark hair and I wear glasses[21]. I have a brother, Anas, and a sister, Malak[22]. I'm really into sports[23]. I love watching football games on TV with my dad[24]. On the weekend, I often meet my friends in the park to play basketball[25]. I think a lot about the future[26]. I want to be an engineer[27]. Write and tell me about yourself[28].

From Sentences to Topics

- A Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.



Scanned with CamScanner



Review through the Exam on Unit 4

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات

25 Vocabulary

أهم 25 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان].

glasses	نظارات	prosthetic arm	ذراع اصطناعية	roar	يزأر
braces	دعامات أسنان	comic books	قصص مصورة	glider	طائرة شراعية
expressions	تعبيرات	kindness	العطف	herd	قطيع
different	مختلف	bricks	مكعبات / قوالب	leader	قائد
sign language	لغة الإشارة	disability	إعاقة	hero	بطل
wheelchair	كرسى متحرك	poster	ملصق	passengers	مسافرون
hobbies	هوايات	decorate	يزين	creative	مبدع
walker	مشاية طبية	physiotherapist	أخصائى علاج طبيعى		
photography	التصوير	celebrate	يحتفل		

10 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.

ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. We are different[1] to each other.
2. He built a prosthetic arm[2] with plastic bricks.
3. She wears braces[3] to make her teeth straight.
4. David's dad wrote a comic book[4] about David.
5. These posters[5] are very beautiful.
6. Kindness[6] and happiness are very important in our life.
7. A herd[7] of elephants and hundreds of mice lived happily together.
8. Everyone can make a difference[8].
9. Amber is into photography[9].
10. Hana's new walker[10] arrived.

[1] كتاب الطالب	[2] بورسعيد - شمال بورسعيد	[3] كتاب الطالب	[4] كتاب الطالب	[5] كتاب الطالب
[6] المنيا - مطاى	[7] كتاب الطالب	[8] كتاب التدريبات	[9] كتاب الطالب	[10] كتاب الطالب

Scanned with CamScanner

Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والمحافظات
(التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان)

1 Reported questions الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر.

A Yes / No question → السؤال بـ "هل"

ex. - Ashraf asked, "Does he have any pets ?"
- Ashraf asked if he had any pets.

B Wh-question → السؤال بكلمة استفهام

ex. - "What are you doing ?" Adam asked.
- Adam asked what I was doing.

2 Superlatives صيغة التفضيل

A Short adjectives → the + صفة قصيرة + est

ex. - The giraffe is the tallest animal in the world.

B Long adjectives → the most / least + صفة طويلة

ex. - Butterflies are the most beautiful creatures.
- Today is the best day at school.

Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Ahmed asked me where the book was.
2. Dina asked me if I had a mobile phone.
3. Mom asked me how the exam was.
4. January is often the coldest month in Egypt.
5. Hatem is the tallest student in the class.
6. Sara is the youngest student in our team.
7. My mom asked me what time I did my homework.
8. Our teacher asked if we could all see the whiteboard.
9. It was the worst vacation.
10. Mr Edward told us about the best ways to communicate.

[1] كتاب الطالب	[2] الأقصر - إسنا	[3] كتاب التدريبات	[4] البحيرة - كفر الدوار	[5] الأسكندرية - المنتزة
[6] كفر الشيخ - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية	[7] سوهاج - طما	[8] دمياط - الزرقا	[9] البحيرة - رشيد	[10] كتاب الطالب

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 23 On Unit 4

اختبار المعاصر



• نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why does Miss Rana want them to get into groups ?

.....

2. What is the poster about ?

.....

3. Where do animals live ?

.....

4. How does Miss Rana like the posters ?

.....

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

movie – speaking – newspaper – opinion – have

Sherif : Mom, I'd really like to understand English better !

Mom : What do you think about [1] ..... English all day with me ?

Sherif : I don't know, Mom. In my [2] ....., it might be difficult.

Mom : What about speaking English while we [3] ..... our lunch then ?

Sherif : To me, that's a much better idea !

Mom : Great ! What about watching an English [4] ..... this evening ?

Sherif : I think that could work well. There's a fantastic movie I'd like to see. Thanks, Mom !

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi everybody !

How are things ? My name's Amber. I'm eleven, and I live in New York. I go to Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family ! I'm **keen on** walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside. As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club, and we have games about once a month.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is mainly about " ..... ".

a. New York
b. Alex Modern School
c. Sports
d. Amber's personal profile

Scanned with CamScanner

2. The underlined phrase "**keen on**" means ..... .

a. far from b. different to c. interested in d. worried about

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does Amber look like ?

.....

4. Why do they call Amber the baby of the family ?

.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. There will be wind chimes in the sensory garden. [.....]
2. Asser's parents showed him a large information board. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Asser see his parents ?

.....

2. What was Asser worried that his parents might forget ?

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My dad asked what time I ..... from school.

a. arrives b. arrive c. arrived d. arriving

2. What is the ..... sport ?

a. more dangerous b. most dangerous
c. dangerous than d. dangerous as

3. He used the ..... material to make a beautiful invention.

a. cheap b. cheaper c. cheapest d. cheaper than

4. She asked him if he ..... been to France before.

a. having b. has c. have d. had

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. saved – from – The mice – the hunters – elephants – the.

.....

2. flying – above – city – The plane – was – enormous – an.

.....

7 Write a personal profile of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements:

- Name
- What do you look like ?
- Your hobbies
- What are your future plans ?

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 24 On Unit 4



إختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والإختبارات السابقة

• نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب
• التقييمات الشهرية فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is Ramez's favorite hobby ?

.....

2. Where did Ramez's club go for a walk ?

.....

3. Who pointed to the object ?

.....

4. How many photos could they take to an object ?

.....

(Qena – Deshna 2024)

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

laugh – glasses – aid – straight – sporty

These are my friends at school. Shady is tall and wears [1] ..... . He's very creative and likes drawing. Laila is very kind – she helps everybody. She has [2] ..... hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing [3] ..... . Amira loves drama and has curly dark hair. She also loves reading and always has books in her hands. Hesham is very [4] ....., and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.

(Cairo - Al-Tabin 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hana is a good friend who has cerebral palsy, so her brain works differently. Every year, she receives a new walker. Her friend Reem comes over to paint it green and decorate it with stars and stickers so it looks **awesome**.

Later, they go for a walk to the park to get fresh air and exercise her legs. At the park, they meet their friends. Suddenly a woman says her little boy, Adam, is missing. Everyone looks around the grass, the snack bar, and the trees.

Luckily, Hana finds Adam pulling himself up on her walker. His mom is so thankful and relieved, and they all eat ice cream to celebrate.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**awesome**" means ..... .
   a. messy b. amazing c. dark d. boring
2. Hana receives a new ..... every year.
   a. necklace b. camera c. tablet d. walker

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why does Hana's brain work differently ?

.....

4. How does Adam's mom feel after finding her son ?

.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser practiced the piano for the school concert. *(Alexandria - West Alexandria 2024)* [.....]

2. Shady is Asser's cousin. *(Dakahlia - West of Mansoura 2025)* [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What was Asser's parents' secret ? *(Menoufia - Shebin El Koum 2024)*

.....

2. How did Asser find out his parents' secret ? *(Damietta 2024)*

.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sara is ..... student in our team. *(Kafr El-Sheikh - English supervision 2025)*

a. youngest b. younger c. young d. the youngest

2. My mom asked me what time ..... my homework. *(Sohag - Tema 2025)*

a. do I do b. did I c. I did d. I do

3. Our teacher asked ..... we could all see the whiteboard. *(Damietta - El Zarqa 2024)*

a. that b. to c. if d. not to

4. It was the ..... vacation. *(Beheira - Rosetta 2024)*

a. worst b. worse c. bad d. badly

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - and - glasses - wears - Hany - tall . *(Minya – Deir Moawas 2025)*

.....

2. about - do - What - think - you - football ? *(Cairo - Helwan 2024)*

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

A short description of a friend

Guiding elements: *(Cairo - Al Sahel / Minya - Samalut 2024)*

- tall
- eyes
- glasses
- hair

.....

Scanned with CamScanner



Non-Fiction Reader

Hassan Fathy : A biography

Listen and repeat. استمع ورردد.

• Vocabulary

architect	مهندس معمارى	cool	معتدل الحرارة
police officer	ضابط شرطة	close to	قريب من
comfortable	مريح	die	يموت
character	شخصية	local	محلى
mud bricks	قوالب الطوب الطينى	adult	بالغ [راشد]
climate	مناخ	architecture	هندسة / طراز معماري
workplace	ورشة عمل	university	الجامعة
encourage	يشجع	low-cost	منخفض التكلفة
drawing	الرسم	domed roofs	اسقف على شكل قبة
painting	الرسم بالالوان	public	عام
attractive	جذاب	award	جائزة
features	سمات	thick walls	حوائط سميكة

• Definitions تعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
public	something that everybody in the community can see or use
feature	an important part of something that you notice because it seems important or interesting
domed	something which has a round shape
architecture	designing and making buildings
mud brick	a type of building material made of earth
attractive	nice and pleasant to look at

Scanned with CamScanner

Main points on Hassan Fathy's biography

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian architect who was born in Alexandria in 1900.
حسن فتحى هو مهندس مصرى شهير ولد فى الاسكندرية عام ١٩٠٠.

2. As a child, Hassan Fathy was creative and he loved drawing and painting.
عندما كان طفل، كان مبدع، فكان يحب الرسم والتلوين.

3. He studied architecture at Cairo University and later, worked as an architect.
درس الهندسة المعمارية فى جامعة القاهرة ولاحقًا عمل كمهندس معمارى.

4. Fathy became famous for building comfortable, attractive houses using low-cost materials.
اصبح فتحى مشهور ببناء منازل مريحة وجذابة بإستخدام مواد خام منخفضة التكلفة.

5. His houses have Egyptian features for example domed roofs and mud bricks.
تتميز المنازل التى يصممها بالسمات المصرية على سبيل المثال الاسقف المقببة [ذات القبة] والطوب الطينى.

6. New Gourna was Fathy's first big project that began in the 1940s.
"نيوجورنا" هو أول وأكبر مشروع قام به فتحى والذى بدأ فى فترة الأربعينات.

7. Fathy built new homes in the traditional style.
قام فتحى ببناء منازل جديدة على الطراز التقليدى.

8. Fathy built other public buildings, for example, schools, for Egypt's Ministry of Education.
بنى فتحى مبانى اخرى عامة، على سبيل المثال المدارس لوزارة التربية والتعليم المصرية.

9. Today, we can see Hassan Fathy's work is important for three reasons :
يمكننا اليوم أن نرى أهمية أعمال حسن فتحى لثلاثة أسباب :

   a. He understood that traditional architecture was great.
   ادرك أن الهندسة المعمارية التقليدية كانت رائعة.

   b. The houses he built are very comfortable for people.
   المنازل التى قام ببنائها مريحة جدًا للناس.

   c. He knew it is important to build for the local climate.
   ادرك أنه من الهام أن يبني بناء مناسب للمناخ المحلى.

10. His houses have high domed roofs and thick mud walls to keep them cool.
تتميز منازله بأسقف مقببة عالية وجدران من القوالب الطينية سميكة لإبقائها باردة.

Scanned with CamScanner



Listen and repeat. استمع ورردد.

Vocabulary

planning	تخطيط	position	موقع
Kharga	صحراء "الخارجة"	courtyard	فناء [ساحة]
rise	ترتفع	provide	يمد / يزود
secondly	ثانيًا	community	مجتمع
well	بئر	social center	مركز اجتماعي
hold	يحمل [يمسك]	design	يصمم / تصميم
domed roofs	الاسطح المقببة [ذات قبه]	temperature	درجة الحرارة
sadly	من المحزن	degree	درجة
create	ينشأ	luckily	لحسن الحظ
respect	يحترم	wind catchers	مصائد الرياح
organization	منظمة	shade	ظل
challenges	تحديات [صعوبات]	shaded seating area	منطقة للجلوس مظللة
firstly	أولًا	building	مبنى
builder	بَنَّاء	unfinished	لم تكتمل
mud brick	طوب لَبِن	villa	فيلا

Main points on New Baris

1. The ODD organization asked Hassan Fathy to design a village in the desert at Kharga for the farmers.
طلبت منظمة ODD من "حسن فتحى" أن يصمم قرية للفلاحين فى صحراء الخارجة.

2. It was important to keep the village cool because the temperature sometimes rose to 50 degrees.
كان من الضرورى أن تحتفظ القرية بدرجة حرارة معتدله لان فى بعض الأوقات كانت تصل درجة الحرارة إلى ٥٠ درجة مئوية.

3. They needed to find water for farmers' crops and families before building the new houses.
كانوا فى حاجه إلى توفير المياه لمحاصيل الفلاحين وعائلاتهم قبل البدء فى بناء المنازل الجديدة.

4. To keep the village houses cool, they were made of mud bricks.
صنعت منازل القريه من الطوب اللبن لكى يحتفظوا بدرجة الحرارة المعتدله بها.

Scanned with CamScanner

5. The village also had windcatchers - they are tall buildings which hold hot air and cool it down.

وكان بالقرية أيضًا مصائد رياح وهى عبارة عن مبانى مرتفعة تحتفظ بالهواء الساخن وتخفض درجة حرارته.

6. Fathy designed the area so that the buildings gave shade to people in the streets. صمم حسن فتحى المنطقة بحيث أن تعطى المبانى ظلًا للناس فى الشوارع.

7. He added a taktabosh courtyard which provided a shaded seating area outside. اضاف حسن فتحى فناء تكتابوش والذى وفر للناس منطقة مظللة للجلوس بالخارج.

8. Hassan Fathy added the suk and other buildings. He believed it was important to create communities, not just houses.

أضاف حسن فتحى السوق ومبانى أخرى لأنه كان يؤمن بأنه من المهم أن ينشئ مجتمعات وليس فقط منازل.

9. Sadly, New Baris is unfinished. Work on it stopped in 1967.

للاسف لم يتم الانتهاء من العمل عليها، فقد توقف العمل عام ١٩٦٧.

10. You can see and respect Hassan Fathy's designs, today.

ومازلنا حتى اليوم نرى ونحترم تصميمات حسن فتحى.



General Exercises on Non-Fiction Reader

A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Hassan Fathy was a fomous Egyptian athlete. [.....]
2. Fathy designed a whole community, not just houses. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why do you like Hassan Fathy's buildings ?

.....

2. Where did Hassan Fathy need to build a village ?

.....

Scanned with CamScanner



Fiction Reader

A Wonderful Surprise

مفاجأة رائعة

Scanned with CamScanner

Vocabulary

The beginning

put away	يضع الشئ في مكانه	busy	مشغول
neatly	بصورة منظمة / بدقة	daughter	ابنة
look out of	ينظر من خلال	apron	مريلة [مئزر]
surprise	مفاجأة	pick up	يلتقط
cookies	كعك محلى	hug	يحتضن
guitar	جيتار	come out	يخرج
gate	بوابة	Braille	طريقة [برايل] للمكفوفين
smile	يبتسم	muddy	موجل/طيني
wave	يلوح / يشاور	wonderful	رائع

The middle

audiobook	كتاب صوتي / مسموع	sit down	يجلس
parents	الوالدين	remember	يتذكر
yard	ساحة / فناء	shovel	مجرفة / جاروف
thick bushes	شجيرات كثيفة	worried	قلق
concert	حفل موسيقى	Yes, of course.	نعم بالطبع.
plan	خطة / يخطط	have fun	يستمتع
covered in mud	مغطي بالطين	garage	جراج
park	حديقة		

The end

dig	يحفر	neighborhood	حى
surprised	مندهش	wind chimes	اجراس الرياح
sensory garden	الحديقة الحسية	reply	يرد - رد
builders	عمال بناء	spade	مجرفة - جاروف
fountain	نافورة	playground	ملعب
invite	يدعو	touch	يلمس
laugh	يضحك	hang	يعلق
equipment	معدات	secret	سر

Scanned with CamScanner

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
audiobook	An audiobook is a book which you listen to on a device. The words are spoken, not written down. الكتاب الصوتى هو كتاب تستمع إليه على جهاز. وتكون الكلمات منطوقة وغير مدونه.
muddy	When soil is wet, it becomes mud. When something is muddy, it has a lot of mud on it. عندما تكون التربة مبلله، تتحول إلى طين. عندما يكون الشئ طينى ، هذا يعنى أنه يوجد الكثير من الطين عليه (به).
Braille	Braille is a way of writing words for people who can't see well. You touch the Braille with your fingers to read it. برايل هى طريقة لكتابة الكلمات لهؤلاء الذين لا يمكنهم الرؤية جيدًا. يمكنك أن تلمس الحروف المكتوبة بطريقة برايل بأصابعك لكى تقرأها.
bush	A bush is a short tree with a lot of branches and leaves. الشجيرة هى شجرة قصيرة بها الكثير من الفروع والأوراق.
shovel	A shovel is a tool for digging. الجاروف هو أداة للحفر.
garage	A garage is the room of the home where people keep their cars. الجراج هو حجرة ملحقة بالمنزل بها يحفظ [يضع] الناس سياراتهم.
trunk	A trunk is the area at the back of a car. You can put bags or large objects in it. صندوق السيارة هى المنطقة الخلفية من السيارة. يمكنك وضع الحقائب والاشياء الكبيرة بها.
hug	You hug somebody when you put your arms around them. We hug a person to show we care. عندما تحضن أحدًا فأنت تضع ذراعيك حوله. نحن نحضن الأشخاص لنظهر مدى اهتمامنا بهم.
wind chime	A wind chime is a decoration which makes a nice sound in the wind. الجرس الهوائى هو ديكور [زينه] حيث تصنع صوت لطيف عندما تحركها الرياح.

Scanned with CamScanner

Main points on the story



1. The Beginning

Asser and Mayar are going to spend the day with their grandma.

- At the end of the school day, Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly.
- في نهاية اليوم الدراسى، وضع آسر اقلامه الجاف والرصاص فى أماكنها بطريقة منظمة.
- Asser's grandma was waiting at the school gate. • كانت جدة آسر تنتظر خارج بوابة المدرسة.
- Asser smiled and waved at his grandma then hugged her.
- ابتسم آسر ولوح بيده إلى جدته ثم حضنها.
- Grandma's coming at school was a nice surprise. • مجئ الجدة إلى المدرسة كانت مفاجأة لطيفة.
- Mayar is Asser's sister. • ميار هى اخت آسر.
- Mayar was carrying a book and looked very happy. • كانت ميار تحمل كتابًا وتبدو سعيدة جداً.
- Mrs Azza is Mayar's teacher. • الأستاذة عزة هى معلمة ميار.
- Mrs Azza told the grandma that Mayar's book had words in Braille.
- اخبرت الأستاذة عزة الجدة أن كتاب ميار به كلمات بطريقة برايل.
- Asser's parents were busy. • والداي آسر كانا مشغولان.
- Asser and Mayar are going to Grandma's house and she offered to make cookies for them. • سيذهب آسر وميار إلى منزل الجدة وعرضت عليهم أن تصنع لهم كعك محلى.
- The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening.
- مكثوا الأطفال فى منزل الجدة حتى المساء.
- Mom and Dad were happy to see Mayar's new book.
- كانا الام والاب سعداء لرؤية كتاب ميار الجديد.
- The family all got in the car to go home. • ركب جميع أفراد الأسرة السيارة للعودة للمنزل.
- Asser saw his dad's and mom's muddy boots when he opened the car trunk.
- رأى آسر أحذية والده ووالدته متسخة بالوحل عندما فتح صندوق السيارة.
- Mom told Asser not to forget his guitar for music club.
- اخبرت الام آسر ألا ينسى الجيتار الخاص به من أجل حصة الموسيقى.
- Mom told Mayar to remember her apron for pottery classes.
- اخبرت الام ميار ان تتذكر المريلة [المئزر] الخاصة بحصة صناعة الفخار.
- Asser and Mayar are going to go to Grandma's house once again.
- آسر وميار سيذهبوا إلى بيت الجدة مرة أخرى.

Scanned with CamScanner

2. The Middle

Asser is getting ready for the concert.

- Mayar and her mom chose an audiobook to listen to.

• اختارت ميار ووالدتها كتاب صوتى ليستمعوا إليه.

- Asser was thinking about his school concert next week.

• كان آسر يفكر فى الحفلة المدرسية الموسيقية المقررة في الأسبوع المقبل.

- Asser wanted his parents to come and watch him in his school concert.

• كان آسر يود أن يأتى والديه إلى الحفلة الموسيقية ليشاهدوه.

- On the weekend, Mom took the children to Grandma's house at the weekend.

• أخذت الأم أطفالها إلى بيت الجدة فى عطلة نهاية الاسبوع.

- Asser went to the garage to get his football.

• ذهب آسر إلى الجراج ليأخذ كرة القدم الخاصة به.

- Asser saw his dad's shovel outside the garage. The shovel was covered in mud.

• رأى آسر جاروف والده خارج الجراج. كان الجاروف مغطى بالطين.

- The muddy shovel was strange because there was nothing different in the yard.

• كان الجاروف المغطى بالطين امر غريب بالنسبة لآسر لأن لم يكن هناك شئ مختلف فى الساحة.

- Asser and Mayar went to their Grandma's house every day that week.

• ذهب آسر و ميار إلى منزل جدتهم كل يوم فى هذا الأسبوع.

- Asser was worried about the concert.

• كان آسر قلق بشأن الحفلة الموسيقية.

- In Grandma's yard, Asser was playing while Mayar listened to an audiobook.

• فى ساحة منزل الجدة بينما كان يلعب آسر، كانت تستمع ميار إلى كتاب صوتى.

- Shady came by Grandma's house and spoke to Asser.

• مَرّ شادى إلى منزل الجدة وتحدث إلى آسر.

- Asser's friend, Shady invited him to go the park with him and his dad.

• قام شادى صديق آسر بدعوته إلى الحديقة معه ومع والده.

- Asser asked his Grandma before going with Shady to the park.

• استأذن آسر جدته قبل الذهاب إلى الحديقة مع شادى.

Scanned with CamScanner

3. The End

The sensory garden

- Asser and Shady had fun in the park. They sat down by thick bushes when they got tired.
- استمتع آسر وشادى فى الحديقة. جلسوا بجانب الشجيرات الكثيفة عندما تعبوا.
- While Asser and Shady were sitting quietly, they heard Asser's parents talking.
- عندما كان آسر وشادى يجلسون بهدوء فى الحديقة، استمعوا إلى صوت والداي آسر يتحدثون.
- Asser's parents were digging on the other side of the park.
- على الجانب الاخر من الحديقة كان والداي آسر يقومون بالحفر.
- Asser looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots.
- نظر آسر إلى الأسفل فرأى حذاء والده المملوء بالطين.
- The parents showed Asser and Shady a large information board with a plan on it.
- قام الوالدين بعرض لوحه معلومات كبيرة وعليها خطة لآسر وشادي.
- The plan showed lots of exciting new play equipment.
- وكانت هذه الخطة بها معدات لعب جديدة ومثيرة.
- The parents were making a playground with a sensory garden.
- وكان الوالدين يقومون بعمل ملعب بحديقة حسية.
- A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see, and touch all kinds of interesting things.
- الحديقة الحسية هى المكان الذى تستطيع فيه أن تسمع، ترى وتلمس كل انواع الأشياء الشيقة.
- There's a fountain, and wind chimes for relaxing sounds.
- الحديقة الحسية بها نافورة واجراس هوائية للأصوات المريحة.
- Asser's parents didn't tell him about the sensory garden because it's a surprise.
- لم يخبر الوالدين آسر بالحديقة الحسيه لآنها كانت مفاجأة.
- The builders are putting in the big equipment next week.
- سيقوم البناة بتثبيت المعدات الكبيرة الاسبوع القادم.
- Asser and Shady started helping. It was hard work.
- بدأ آسر وشادى بالمساعدة. لقد كان العمل شاق.
- The sensory garden will open next week.
- ستفتتح الحديقة الحسية الأسبوع المقبل.
- Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.
- استمتع آسر وهو يعرض لميار ما قام به حول الحديقة الحسية.
- Mom told Asser that they hadn't forgotten his concert.
- اخبرت الأم آسر انهم لم ينسوا الحفل الموسيقى الخاص به.

Scanned with CamScanner

1 The beginning
بداية القصة

It was the end of the school day, and Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly. He looked out of the classroom window for his mom, but he couldn't see her.

Mrs Eman, his teacher, took the children outside. Then Asser saw his grandma waiting at the school gate. He smiled and waved at her.





Asser loved it when his grandma picked him up, and he hugged her.

"What a nice surprise! I didn't know you were coming today", he said.

"Your mom is busy, so I'm here today," she smiled. "Now, where's your sister ?"

They saw Mayar come out of her classroom.

Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza, came to talk to Grandma.

Scanned with CamScanner

Mrs Azza said, "Mayar has a new book. It has words that you can read to her. It also has words in Braille that she can read herself".

"Thank you!" said Grandma. "We can read this together this evening".

"Are we going to your house today, Grandma ?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, we are. Your mom and dad are busy. Should we make cookies ?"

"Yes, please!". said Asser and Mayar.





The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening. Their parents arrived after dinner.

"Did you have a good time with Grandma today?" asked their mom.

"Yes, of course! And look at my new book from school!" said Mayar.

"It's great. Let's read it when we get home," said their dad.

The family all got in the car to go home. As Asser went to put the school bags in the open trunk, he noticed something strange. He saw his mom and dad's boots there, and they were muddy.

Have Mom and Dad been to a farm?" thought Asser.

Asser then got into the car, and they all went home.



Scanned with CamScanner



The next morning, at breakfast, the children's mom said, "Grandma will pick you up from school again today".

"It's music club today, so don't forget your guitar, Asser. Mayar, you have pottery classes at lunchtime, so remember your apron".

Questions & Answers on the beginning

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكن الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

1. Read and write YES or NO.	Yes
1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher.	Yes
2. Grandma was waiting at the school gate.	Yes
3. Asser loved when his Grandma picked him up.	Yes
4. Mayar was carrying a book.	Yes
6. Asser's mom told him not to forget his guitar.	Yes

• تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

2.Read and write YES or NO.	No	Correction
1. Mrs Azza is Asser's teacher.	No	Eman
2. Asser's book has words in Braille.	No	Mayar's
3. Children made cakes with Grandma.	No	cookies
4. Mayar has music club.	No	pottery
5. Asser needs to remember his apron.	No	guitar
6. Asser found his parent's bags in the car.	No	boots

3. Read and answer the questions.	Answers
1. Who picked children from school ?	Grandma.
2. What was Mayar carrying ?	A book.
3. What did grandma make for children ?	Cookies.
4. What did Asser see in the car trunk ?	His parents' boots but they were muddy.
5. What should Mayar take for her pottery classes ?	An apron

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises on the beginning of the story

1 El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

Mini Test 1

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. When Asser saw Grandma, he smiled and hugged her. [.....]
2. Mayar has a dance class in the evening. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser and Mayar ?

.....

2. Who was Mrs Azza ?

.....

Mini Test 2

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his parents' boots in the car trunk. [.....]
2. Mom and dad's boots were clean. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Grandma come to pick Asser and Mayar up ?

.....

2. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?

.....

Mini Test 3

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser's grandma was waiting at the club gate. [.....]
2. Mayar's book had words in Braille. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Mayar have to read ?

.....

2. What did Asser see when he opened the car trunk ?

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Previous Exams تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

Mini Test 1

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mrs Eman, Asser's teacher, took the children outside. [.....]
2. Mayar has a piano to play. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was waiting for the children at the school gate ?

.....

2. How were their parents' boots ?

.....

[Giza - 6th October 2025]

Mini Test 2

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher. [.....]
2. Mayar has an apron for her pottery class [.....]

[Cairo - New Cairo 2025]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser ?

.....

2. Where did Asser think about his parents were ?

.....

[Cairo - Helwan 2025]

Mini Test 3

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. When Asser opened the car trunk, he found clean clothes. [.....]
2. Mayar was carrying a toy. [.....]

[Aswan - English Supervision 2025]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why couldn't the children's parents pick them up ?

.....

2. What should Mayar take for her pottery classes ?

.....

[Qena - Deshna 2025]

Scanned with CamScanner

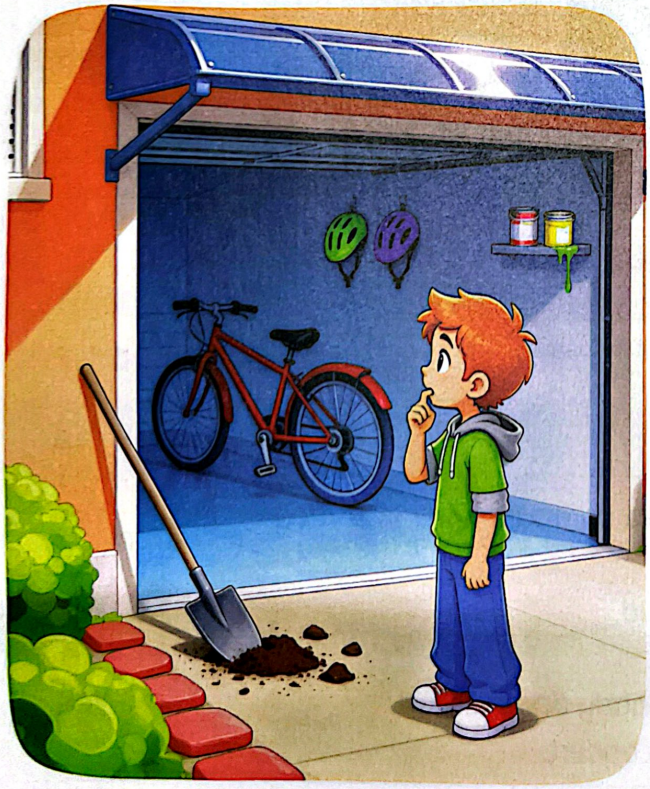
2 | The Middle
منتصف القصة



"Can we listen to an audiobook, Mom?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, of course", her mom said.

While Mayar and her mom chose an audiobook, Asser looked out of the window. He was thinking about his school concert next week. He hoped his parents remembered it. He really wanted them to come and watch him.



On the weekend, the parents were busy again. Mom took the children to Grandma's.

Asser went to the garage to get his football. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's shovel. It was covered in mud. Asser looked around the yard. Why was the shovel so muddy ?

Scanned with CamScanner

Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house every day that week. Asser was worried about the concert. He really wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert. He wanted them to hear him sing and play his guitar. Did they remember about it? They were so busy.





Later on, Asser was playing in Grandma's yard while Mayar listened to an audiobook. Asser's friend, Shady, came by.

"Do you want to come to the park with me and my dad?" asked Shady.
"Yes, but I have to ask Grandma," said Asser.

Asser went inside. "Grandma, can I go to the park with Shady and his dad, please?" he said.

"Yes, of course." replied Grandma.

Questions & Answers on the Middle

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكن الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

1. Read and write YES or NO.	Yes
1. Mayar and her mom listened to an audio book in the car.	Yes
2. Asser took his football.	Yes
3. The shovel was covered in mud.	Yes
4. Asser played in the home.	No
5. Asser went to the park with Shady and his dad.	Yes
6. Asser was worried about the concert.	Yes

Scanned with CamScanner

تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

2. Read and write YES or NO.	No	Correction
1. Asser went to the garage to get his car.	No	football
2. The shovel was covered in sand.	No	mud
3. Mayar practiced her song a lot for the concert.	No	Asser - his
4. Asser was playing in Grandpa's yard.	No	Grandma's
5. Asser went with his cousin Shady to the park.	No	friend
6. Asser saw a basket outside the garage.	No	shovel

3. Read and answer the questions.	Answers
1. What did Mayar listen to in the car ?	An audio book.
2. What was Asser worried about ?	His concert.
3. Why did Asser go to the garage ?	To get his football.
4. What instrument did Asser play ?	The guitar.
5. Where was Asser playing football ?	In Grandma's yard.
6. Who took Asser to the park ?	Shady and his father.

General Exercises on the middle of the story

1 El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

Mini Test 1

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar wanted to listen to the radio in the car. [.....]
2. Asser was thinking about his school concert. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser go to the garage ?

.....

2. Who invited Asser to go to the park ?

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Mini Test 2

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Dad planned to take the children to Grandma's house. [.....]
2. Asser went to the garage to get his basketball. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Mom take the children on the weekend ?

.....

2. What did Asser see in the garage ?

.....

Mini Test 3

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser wanted his parents to remember his concert. [.....]
2. Asser saw a basket outside the garage. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. How did Asser feel about his concert ?

.....

2. What did Asser see outside the garage ?

.....

2 Previous Exams تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

Mini Test 1

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser went to the garage to get his guitar. [.....]
2. Mayar listened to the audiobook in the car. [.....]

[Cairo - El Waili 2025]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Who invited Asser to go to the park ?

.....

2. How did Asser feel about his concert ?

.....

[Giza - Warraq 2025]

Mini Test 2

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his dad's shovel covered in mud. [.....]
2. Shady and his dad invited Asser to the park. [.....]

[Alexandria – West Alexandria 2025]

Scanned with CamScanner

B **Read and answer the questions.**

1. How often did Asser and Mayar go to Grandma's house that week ?

.....

2. When did Mom take the children to Grandma's house ?

.....

[Beheira - El Nubaria 2025]

Mini Test 3

A **Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Shady and Asser didn't go to the park together. [.....]
2. Asser practiced the guitar for the school concert. [.....]

[Damietta - English Supervision 2025]

B **Read and answer the questions.**

1. Who was worried about the concert ?

.....

2. Where did Asser go to get the football ?

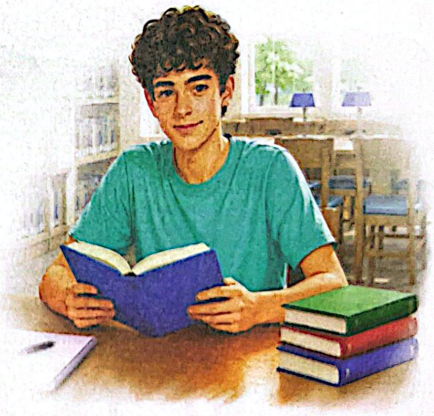
.....

[Giza - English Inspection 2025]

A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط



Scanned with CamScanner

3 The End
نهاية القصة



Asser and Shady had fun in the park. When they got tired, they sat down by some thick bushes.

They were sitting quietly when they heard people talking.

"That sounds like your mom and dad" said Shady.

Asser looked around. It sounded like they were near - but where ?



Asser and Shady walked around the bushes. On the other side, there was a group of people working. Asser's parents were there, digging.

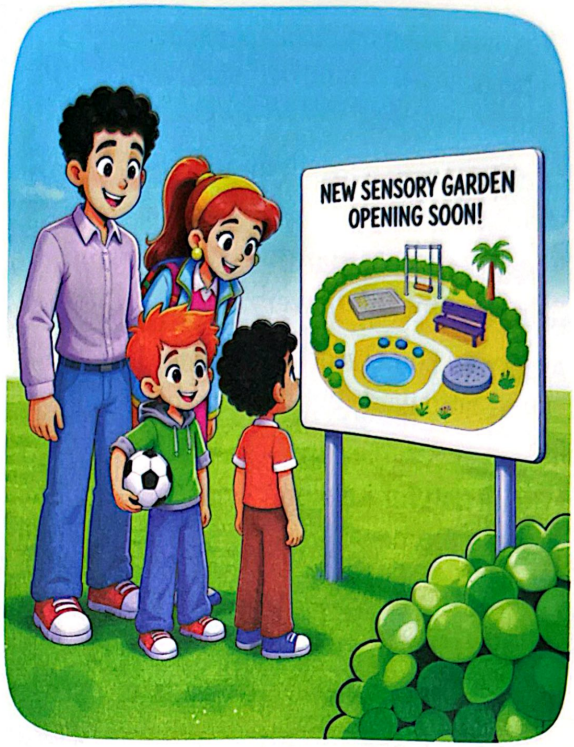
Asser ran over to his parents. "Asser! What are you doing here?" asked his dad.

Asser replied, "Shady and his dad invited me to come to the park. Asser looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots. "But what are you doing here?" he asked.

Scanned with CamScanner

Asser's parents looked at each other and laughed. His dad put down his spade. They showed Asser and Shady a large information board with a plan on it. The plan showed lots of exciting new play equipment.

"We're making a playground with a sensory garden. It's for all the children in the neighborhood to enjoy", said Asser's mom.





"What's a sensory garden?" asked Shady.

"A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see, and touch all kinds of interesting things,"said Asser's dad. There's a fountain, and there will be wind chimes for relaxing sounds. We're planting flowers, too," said Asser's mom. "They will smell beautiful."

This is awesome, "said Asser". Is this why you've been so busy?"

Scanned with CamScanner

"Yes, it is! We didn't tell you about it because it's a surprise!" said his dad.

"I'd love to do something to help, too!" said Asser.

"Great!" said his mom."You can help us plant the flowers".

Asser and Shady started helping. It was hard work, but the boys had fun.

"Thank you for helping!" said Asser's mom.





The next weekend, the children's mom said,"Mayar, we have a surprise!"

Let's all go to the park," said Mayar's dad.

Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.

"I love it here! Thank you for helping us, Asser," said their mom,"and don't worry - we haven't forgotten your concert!"

- **The moral of the story :**

- It's important to think about everyone in your community.

Scanned with CamScanner

Questions & Answers on the End

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكن الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

1. Read and write YES or NO.	Yes
1. Asser and Shady sat by some thick bushes.	Yes
2. Asser heard his parents' voice in the park.	Yes
3. Asser's parents showed him a large information board.	Yes
4. Asser's parents are making a playground with a sensory garden.	Yes
5. There's a fountain in the sensory garden.	Yes

تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

2. Read and write YES or NO.	No	Correction
1. Mayar and Asser helped in the sensory garden.	No	Shady
2. Mayar's favorite thing is the chimes.	No	fountain
3. Asser's parents forgot his concert.	No	didn't forget
4. Asser's parents made a theme park.	No	sensory garden
5. There aren't wind chimes for relaxing sounds.	No	are
6. Grandma enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.	No	Asser

3. Read and answer the questions.	Answers
1. Why didn't Asser's parents tell him about the sensory garden ?	- Because it was a surprise.
2. Who invited Asser to come to the park ?	- Shady and his dad.
3. What was Asser's parents surprise ?	- They were making a sensory garden.
4. What is a sensory garden ?	- It's a place where you can hear, see and touch all kinds of interesting things.
5. Why did Asser's parents make a sensory garden ?	- Because some children couldn't use some equipment in the old playground.
6. How could Asser and Shady help in the sensory garden ?	- They planted flowers and hung the chimes.

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises on the end of the story

1 El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

Mini Test 1

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser's parents were angry when they were digging. [.....]
2. Asser's parents were eating in the park. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What were Asser's parents doing on the other side of the park ?

.....

2. What things are in the sensory garden ?

.....

Mini Test 2

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser and Shady had fun in the cinema. [.....]
2. Mom and Dad are making a playground with a sensory garden. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did the parents show Asser ?

.....

2. Where did Asser and Shady sit down ?

.....

2 Previous Exams تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

Mini Test 1

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. A sensory garden is a place where you can swim in the sea. [.....]
2. There are planting flowers in the sensory garden. [.....]

(Cairo - Helwan 2025)

B Read and answer the questions.

1. How did Asser find out his parents' secret ?

.....

2. What did Asser's mom show him when he saw her in the park ?

.....

(Dakahlia - West Mansoura 2025)

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises on the story

1 El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

Mini Test 1

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar has a concert next week. [.....]
2. Grandma made coffee for children. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. When do Asser and Mayar go to Grandma's house ?

.....

2. What did the parents show Asser ?

.....

Mini Test 2

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser has a piano for his concert. [.....]
2. There're wind chimes in the sensory garden. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Salma plan to do on the weekend ?

.....

2. Why did Asser go to the garage ?

.....

Mini Test 3

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. The fountain is in the park. [.....]
2. Mayar and her mom chose a written book to listen. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Who gave Mayar a Braille book ?

.....

2. What was wrong with the old playground ?

.....

Mini Test 4

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar wanted her parents to hear her sing and play the guitar. [.....]
2. Asser's parents were making a playground with a sensory garden. [.....]

Scanned with CamScanner

B Read and answer the questions.

1. Who came by Grandma's house and spoke to Asser ?

.....

2. Where did Asser and Shady go ?

.....

2 Previous Exams تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

Mini Test 5

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar went to the park with Asser. [.....]
2. Asser has a concert next week. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?

.....

2. Where did Asser and Shady go ?

.....

[Cairo – Ain Shams 2025]

Mini Test 6

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher. [.....]
2. Asser and Shady sat down by some tall trees in the park. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did the children make with their grandmother ?

.....

2. What was Asser's parents doing for Mayar ?

.....

[Menofia – Shebeen El Kom 2025]

Mini Test 7

A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser and Mayar make a cake at grandma's house. [.....]
2. The sensory garden is just for Mayar. [.....]

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Asser see when he opened the car trunk ?

.....

2. Who came by Grandma's house and spoke to Asser ?

.....

[Suez 2025]

Scanned with CamScanner



Poetry Corner

Poetry Corner 1

Vocabulary

lay a-bed	مستلقيا فى السرير	pillow	وساده
toys	العاب	uniform	زى رسمى / موحد
bed-clothes	اغطية السرير	hills	تلال
fleets	اساطيل	ships	سفن
sheets	ملاءات السرير	giant	عملاق
plain	ارض منبسطة (سهل)	still	ساكن / ثابت
dale	وادٍ	pleasant	جميل / ممتع
counterpane	غطاء السرير	leaden soldiers	العاب على شكل الجنود الصغيرة
drills	تدريبات		

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة		Definition التعريف	
leaden	رصاص	made of a metal called lead	مصنوع من معدن يُسمى الرصاص
drills	تدريبات	things that soldiers practice, such as walking together	تمارين يتدرب عليها الجنود، مثل المشى معًا
fleets	اسطول	groups of ships	مجموعات من السفن
dale	واد	a large valley	وادٍ واسع
counterpane	غطاء السرير	something you can put over a bed	غطاء يُوضع على السرير

Scanned with CamScanner

The Poem

The Land of Counterpane

When I was sick and lay a-bed,
I had two pillows at my head,
And all my toys beside me lay
To keep me happy all the day.

And sometimes for an hour or so
I watched my leaden soldiers go,
With different uniforms and drills,
Among the bed-clothers, through the hills;

And sometimes sent my ships in fleets
All up and down among the sheets;
Or brought my trees and houses out,
And planted cities all about.

I was the giant great and still
That sits upon the pillow-hill,
And sees before him, dale and plain,
The pleasant land of counterpane.

by Robert Louis Stevenson

Let's explore the Poem

1 The main idea الفكرة الرئيسية

- The poem is about a sick boy who uses his imagination while staying in bed. He imagines his bed is a wonderful land with hills, cities, ships, and soldiers. His toys help him stay happy and have adventures.
- القصيدة تتحدث عن ولد مريض يستخدم خياله أثناء بقائه فى السرير. يتخيل أن سريره أرض رائعة فيها تلال ومدن وسفن وجنود. وتساعده ألعابه على الشعور بالسعادة وخوض مغامرات.

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Rhyme القافية

• The last word of a line in poem rhymes with the last word in another line.

• تتطابق الكلمة الأخيرة فى بيت من أبيات القصيدة مع الكلمة الأخيرة فى بيت آخر.

* a - bed **rhymes with** head
* lay **rhymes with** day
* so **rhymes with** go
* drills **rhymes with** hills
* fleets **rhymes with** sheets
* out **rhymes with** about
* still **rhymes with** hill
* plain **rhymes with** counterpane

كلمة a - bed تتناغم مع head أى تنتهى بنفس الصوت

3 A regular rhyming scheme نظام (نمط) القافية المنتظم

• A rhyming scheme in a poem is regular if it has the same pattern in all of the poem. If the pattern is different, the poem doesn't have a regular rhyming scheme.

يكون نظام القافية فى القصيدة منتظمًا إذا كان نمطه ثابتًا فى جميع أبياتها. أما إذا اختلف النمط، فلا يكون نظام القافية منتظمًا.

In "The Land of Counterpane" Poem, rhyming scheme is regular ⟶ AA BB

نمط القافية فى القصيدة منتظم

* لأن كل سطرين متتاليين ينتهيان بكلمتين لهما نفس القافية.

4 Imagery التصوير الشعرى

• Imagery in a poem creates pictures in the reader's mind.

• يخلق التصوير الشعرى فى القصيدة صورًا ذهنية لدى القارئ.

• The poet uses words to help us imagine pictures in our mind.

• يستخدم الشاعر كلمات تساعدنا على تخيل صور فى أذهاننا.

Examples from the poem :

* "leaden soldiers"
* "ships in fleets"
* "trees and houses"
* "planted cities"
* "pillow-hill"
* "dale and plain"

These words help us imagine the boy's bed as a magical land full of adventures.

تساعدنا هذه الكلمات على تخيل سرير الطفل كأنه أرض سحرية مليئة بالمغامرات.

Scanned with CamScanner

Poetry Corner 2

Vocabulary

bright	مشرق / لامع	creatures	مخلوقات
wise	حكيم	glowing	زاهى / مشرق
tiny	صغير جدًا	wings	اجنحة
purple-headed	ذو قمة بنفسجية	ripe fruits	ثمار ناضجة

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة		Definition التعريف	
creatures	المخلوقات	any living animal	أى حيوان حى
glowing	مشرق	shining like the sun.	ساطع كالشمس
brightens up	ينير	makes lighter and nicer	يجعل الشئ أكثر إشراقًا وجمالًا
ripe	ناضج	ready to eat	جاهز للأكل

The Poem

All Things Bright and Beautiful

All things bright and beautiful,
All creatures great and small,
All things wise and wonderful,
The Lord God made them all.

Each little flower that opens,
Each little bird that sings,
He made their glowing colors,
He made their tiny wings.

The purple-headed mountain,
The river running by,
The sunset, and the morning,
That brightens up the sky;

The cold wind in the winter,
The pleasant summer sun,
The ripe fruits in the garden,
He made them every one.
by Cecil Frances Alexander



Scanned with CamScanner

Let's explore the Poem

1 The main idea الفكرة الرئيسية

• The poem is about the beautiful things in nature that God created. It tells us that God made flowers, birds, mountains, rivers, the sun, and all living things. The poem reminds us to appreciate the beauty of nature.

• القصيدة تتحدث عن الأشياء الجميلة في الطبيعة التي خلقها الله. وتخبرنا أن الله خلق الزهور والطيور والجبال والأنهار والشمس وجميع المخلوقات. وتذكرنا القصيدة بتقدير جمال الطبيعة.

2 Rhyme القافية

• الكلمات التي تتوافق في القافية هي.

* small **rhymes with** all
* sings **rhymes with** wings
* by **rhymes with** sky
* sun **rhymes with** one

كلمة small تتناغم مع all أي تنتهي بنفس الصوت.

3 Regular rhyming scheme نمط القافية المنتظم

In "All Things Bright and Beautiful" poem, rhyming scheme is regular

→ ABCB

نمط القافية في القصيدة منتظم ABCB حيث تتوافق قافية السطرين الثاني والرابع.

4 Imagery الصور الشعرية

• The poet uses words to help us imagine beautiful pictures in nature.

• يستخدم الشاعر كلمات تساعدنا على تخيل صور جميلة في الطبيعة.

Examples from the poem :

* "Each little flower that opens"
* "Each little bird that sings"
* "The purple-headed mountain"
* "The river running by"
* "The sunset, and the morning"
* "The cold wind in the winter"
* "The pleasant summer sun"
* "The ripe fruits in the garden"

These words help us imagine the beauty of nature and God's creation.

تساعدنا هذه الكلمات على تخيل جمال الطبيعة ومخلوقات الله.

Scanned with CamScanner



General Exercises on Poetry Corner

1 Complete the poem with the words in the box :

head - hills - lay - out - plain - sheets - so - still

- The Land of Counterpane

1. When I was sick and lay a-bed,
   I had two pillows at my (1) ..... ,
   And all my toys beside me (2) .....
   To keep me happy all the day.
2. And sometimes for an hour or (3) .....
   I watched my leaden soldiers go,
   With different uniforms and drills,
   Among the bed-clothes, through the (4) ..... ;
3. And sometimes sent my ships in fleets
   All up and down among the (5) ..... ;
   Or brought my trees and houses (6) ..... ,
   And planted cities all about.
4. I was the giant great and (7) .....
   That sits upon the pillow-hill,
   And sees before him, dale and (8) ..... ,
   The pleasant land of counterpane.

2 Read the poem again and check (✓) the correct ending for each sentence.

1. The boy is happy because he is ..... .
   a. in bed ☐ b. has his toys with him ☐
2. The soldiers are ..... .
   a. some of his toys ☐ b. in a dream ☐
3. The ships are ..... .
   a. on top of the bed ☐ b. in the boy's head ☐

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Circle the two words that rhyme in each set.

1. two	blue	now
2. hour	pour	power
3. shape	gym	ship
4. tree	try	sea
5. behind	door	before
6. dale	doll	train

4 Number the lines from the first two verses of the poem in the correct order:

- All Things Bright and Beautiful

- [ ] All things wise and wonderful,
- [ ] Each little flower that opens,
- [ ] He made their tiny wings,
- [ ] All things bright and beautiful,
- [ ] The Lord God made them all.
- [ ] He made their glowing colors,
- [ ] Each little bird that sings,
- [ ] All creatures great and small,

5 Read the last two verses of the poem and answer the questions:

The purple-headed mountain,
The river running by,
The sunset, and the morning.
That brightens up the sky;
The cold wind in the winter,
The pleasant summer sun,
The ripe fruits in the garden,
He made them every one.

1. What is at the bottom of the mountain?
2. What happens early in the morning?
3. What time of year is it?
4. Where are the ripe fruits?

6 Write two words that rhyme with each of these words from the poem:

1. great .....
2. bird .....
3. sun .....
4. fruit .....

Scanned with CamScanner



El-Moasser Follow-up

كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى

Scanned with CamScanner



Contents

El-Moasser Homework Notebook

محتويات كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى

Part 1 Monthly Assessments

1 October Test

2 November Test





Part 2 Master your skills



Scanned with CamScanner

Monthly Assessments through the Exam

October Month



1 General Revision

مراجعة على منهج شهر أكتوبر من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات

I Vocabulary

exhibition	معرض - عرض	apron	مريلة	vaccine	لقاح
junk modeling	تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة	kiln	فرن للخزف	refrigerator	ثلاجة
making a collage	صناعة الأعمال الفنية من الملصقات	regret	يندم على	blender	خلاط
pottery	صناعة الأواني الفخارية	comic books	كتب مصورة مضحكة	power outage	انقطاع التيار الكهربائي
clay	صلصال	swap	يتبادل	extension cable	وصلة سلك
beads	خرز	apartment	شقة سكنية	electricity	كهرباء
sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت	appliance	جهاز - آلة	collar	طوق [حول الرقبة]
animation	رسوم متحركة	blade	شفرة		
sculptor	نحات	invention	اختراع		

II Language

1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

▸ **Formation :** التكوين

Statement الجملة الخبرية → **If** إذا / **When** عندما + **present simple** , ... **present simple/can+inf.**

ex. - If / When people have a toothache, they go to the dentist.

2 The first conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

▸ **Formation :** التكوين

Statement الجملة الخبرية → **If** إذا / لو + **present simple tense** زمن المضارع البسيط , **subject** الفاعل + **will ('ll) /can / may / will not (won't)/can't** + **(inf.)** مصدر الفعل

ex. - I may buy a new bike if I have enough money.

Scanned with CamScanner

2 General Exercises

Model 1

• • **Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.**

guitar – concert – problem – award – find

Interviewer : Wow Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so talented.

Mazen : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a (1) .....

Interviewer : I'm not surprised. You played the (2) ..... and sang for over an hour.

Mazen : It went very quickly. But no one knew about the problem I had before the concert.

Interviewer : A (3) .....! What was that ?

Mazen : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where.

Interviewer : Where did you (4) ..... it ?

Mazen : My friend found it behind the piano. *(Luxor 2024)*

Model 2

• **Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Tall Tree and the Eye is a **famous** sculpture by Kapoor. You can see it outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 metal balls.

The metal is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The balls look like bubbles which are floating !

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and how materials work. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about " a ..... ".

a. material b. museum c. sculpture d. subject

2. The underlined word "**famous**" means ..... .

a. well-known b. terrible c. different d. dark

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where can you see Tall Tree and the Eye ?

.....

4. How do you know that Kapoor was a great artist ?

.....

Model 3

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He can help you if you ..... him.
   a. asking b. to ask c. asked d. ask
2. I will mop ..... the water.
   a. out b. up c. on d. away
3. If you want to get up early, ... early.
   a. to sleep b. sleep c. sleeps d. sleeping
4. When I finished my project, I ..... it to my teacher.
   a. giving b. give c. gave d. gives

Model 4

• Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. away – the – she – When – put – did – dishes ?

.....

2. paint – vase – He – the – to – used – decorate.

.....

Model 5

• Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.

A pet

Guiding elements:

• food • sleep • vet • vaccine

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Monthly Assessments through the Exam

November Month



1 General Revision

مراجعة على منهج شهر نوفمبر من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتدريبات.

I Vocabulary

green roofs	اسقف خضراء	repair	يصلح	herd	قطيع
sleds	زلاجات	demonstration	إيضاح - عرض	route	طريق
reindeer	حيوان الرنة	collapse	ينهار	co-pilot	مساعد طيار
timetable	جدول مواعيد	steep	شديد الانحدار	praise	يمدح
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	braces	تقويم الأسنان	crawl	يزحف
scribe	كاتب	wheelchair	كرسى متحرك	hunter	صياد
neat	مرتب	hearing aid	سماعة الأذن	leader	قائد
kindergarten	روضة أطفال	sign language	لغة الإشارة	advertisement	إعلان

II Language

1 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

●●●● always ●●●○ usually ●●○○ often ●○○○ sometimes ○○○○ never

2 Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

Statement : الجملة الخبرية

Speaker المتحدث	+	فعل القول said قال / told اخبر	+	[that]	+	subject الفاعل	+	verb فعل الجملة	+	باقي الجملة
Ali		+ مفعول		that		he		was		ill.
الشخص الذى قال الكلام المباشر		told : لاحظ أن لابد أن يتبعها مفعول		[أداة ربط] يمكن حذفها		يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتناسب مع المتكلم والمخاطب		يتحول الزمن إلى الأبعد		

"I like making jewelry," said Fares. → Fares said he liked making jewelry.

3 Superlative صيغة التفضيل

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة → the + short adj. + est

ex. - The whale is the biggest sea animal.

Scanned with CamScanner

2 General Exercises

Model 1

• **Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

racket – rocket – club – animations – nervous

I joined a new club at school this term. We are learning to use computers to make (1) ..... . It's great fun ! At the moment, I'm making a story with moving pictures about somebody who makes a (2) ..... and goes to the moon. I also go to a music (3) ..... every week. I play the violin and I'll be in a concert next week - I'm a bit (4) ..... .

Model 2

•• **Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Schools around the world want to do the same thing to give children a good education. In some countries, children **start** elementary school at seven years old. In other countries, the children are younger. In other countries in Africa, for example Siberia, some people have a nomadic culture, where they move from place to place. This means their teachers have to be flexible with the timetable. The teacher chooses subjects which are the most important at different times.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "Different ..... ".
   a. countries b. schools c. children d. timetables
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**start**" is ..... .
   a. move b. find c. hang d. finish

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What's the importance of schools for children ?
   .....
4. How is the school timetable in nomadic areas ?
   .....

(Cairo - Helwan 2024)

Model 3

•• **The Reader**

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Grandma went to Mayar's house every day. [.....]
2. Asser was worried about the concert. [.....]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What instrument does Asser play ?
   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

2. What was Asser doing in Grandma's yard ?

.....

Model 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He..... that he had a stomachache.
   a. says b. tell c. tells d. said
2. My friend said that he..... meet me at 7:00 at the park.
   a. would b. will c. can d. are
3. He..... excited when he visits his favorite places.
   a. is always b. never is c. often is d. are usually
4. She said that the bus..... there.
   a. were b. is c. will be d. was

Model 5

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. education – important – School trips – very – for – are.

.....

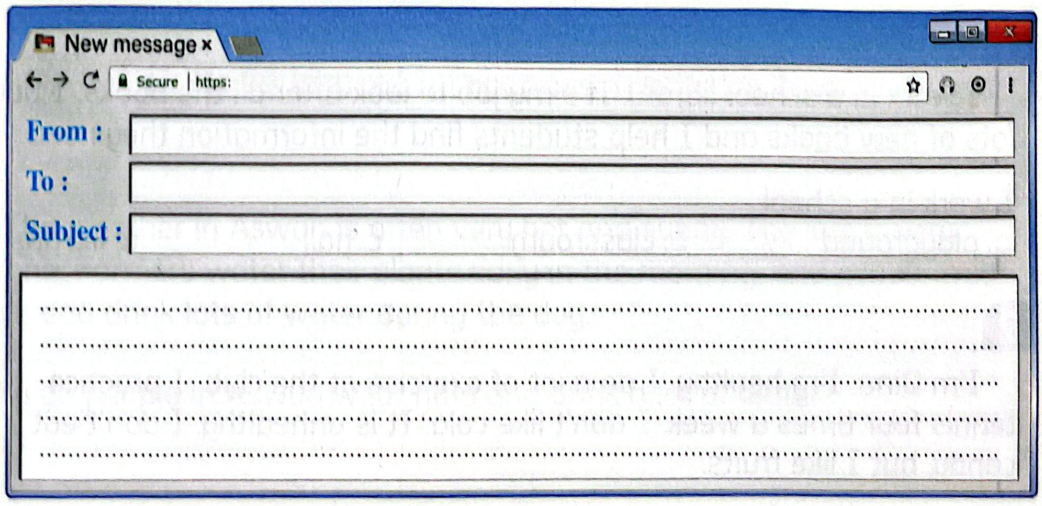
2. the – nomadic – in – How – timetables – are – schools ?

.....

Model 6

Write an email of SEVENTY (70) words about green roofs to your friend Anas. Your friend's email address is anas@gmail.com. Your name is Malek and your email address is malek@gmail.com.

Guiding elements: • gardens • control pollution • nature • design



Scanned with CamScanner

Part 2

Master your skills



1 Reading Skill

١. مهارة القراءة

تعلم كيفية التعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

1. Identify the general idea

1

The Nile River is the longest river in the world. It brings life to all of Egypt. It provides water for people to drink and for farmers to grow crops. Many animals, like crocodiles and fish, also live in the Nile.

- The text is about the ..... .
  a. dry desert b. small lake c. Nile River d. big city

2

To stay healthy, you should eat good food like fruits and vegetables. You should also play sports and exercise to make your body strong. Getting enough sleep every night is very important, too.

- The main idea of the text is about ..... .
  a. playing video games b. how to be healthy
  c. favorite school subjects d. different kinds of jobs

2. Demonstrate understanding of specific details

1

I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help students find the information they need.

- I work in a school ..... .
  a. playground b. classroom c. hall d. library

2

I'm Dina. I'm healthy. I do a lot of exercise at the club. I practice tennis four times a week. I don't like cola. It is unhealthy. I don't eat candy, but I like fruits.

- Dina does a lot of ..... at the club.
  a. jobs b. exercise c. food d. cakes

Scanned with CamScanner

3. Determine the meaning of words and phrases

1

My parents work on tourist boats so I go with them. They travel a lot. I see many **interesting** places. I meet people from all over the world.

- The underlined word "**interesting**" means "……".

a. bad b. fresh c. wonderful d. hot

2

The old farmer had three sons. They were strong, but they were always fighting. They never worked together. This made their father very **worried** about their future.

- The underlined word "**worried**" means "……".

a. selfish b. relaxed

c. weak d. nervous

4. Describe the relationship between two people, events or ideas

A mechanic is a very helpful person in the community. When a car or a bus has a problem and stops working, the mechanic can fix it, so people can travel safely again.

- How does a mechanic help people ? ……

5. Make logical inferences from the text

The weather in Aswan is often very hot and sunny. The sun is very strong. Farmers water their plants early in the morning, and people wear hats and drink lots of water during the day.

- Why do people in Aswan wear hats and drink a lot of water?

……

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Writing Skill

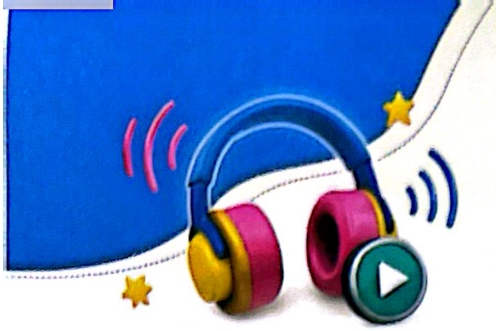
٢. مهارة الكتابة

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Your bedroom	▸ **Write the meaning :** ..... غرفة ..... مريح أجهزة الحاسوب الشخصى .... يشارك ..... واجب منزلى	▸ **Reorder the words :** **1.** is - and - My room - light - comfortable. ..... **2.** can - our - in - We - do - homework - our bedroom. ..... **3.** share - bedroom - I - my - my brother - with. ..... **4.** have - desk - We - a long - our - for - PCs.	▸ **Write a paragraph about :** **"Your bedroom"** ....
Amazing appliances	..... مُحَرك - موتور ..... شفْرة ..... لِقّاح ..... خلاط ..... معدن	**5.** turns - blades - The motor - the. ..... **6.** were - to - Blenders - used - a vaccine - make. ..... **7.** metal - blenders - Some - are made of - plastic - and.	**"Amazing appliances"** ....
Caring for your cat	..... عناية - اهتمام ..... يلاطف - يداعب ..... عمود خدش ..... قطة ..... يعطى	**8.** your - lots - Give - cat - attention - of. ..... **9.** should - cat - your - You - stroke. ..... **10.** needs - post - A cat - a scratch.	▸ **Write an email about :** **"Caring for your cat"** ....

Scanned with CamScanner

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs / Emails متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية أو بريد إلكتروني
Ways to communicate	▸ Write the meaning : ..... رسائل نصية ..... تواصل ..... لغة الإشارة ..... مفيد	▸ Reorder the words : 1. can - messages - We - send - text. ..... 2. can - many - We - use - ways - communicate - to. ..... 3. language - a useful - Sign - is - to communicate - way.	▸ Write paragraphs about : "Ways to communicate" ....
We are all different	..... كرسى متحرك ..... مختلف ..... تقويم أسنان ..... سماعة أذن ..... برندى	4. uses - He - wheelchair - a. ..... 5. are - all - We - different. ..... 6. wears - She - braces. ..... 7. have - hearing - They - a - aid.	"We are all different" ....
Your hobbies	..... مركز تجارى ..... تلتقط صور ..... يستمع ..... موسيقى ..... يحب	8. love - mall - the - I - to - going. ..... 9. like - photos - I - taking. ..... 10. love - music - I - listening - to.	▸ Write an email about : "Your hobbies" ....

Scanned with CamScanner



Listening Texts



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Unit 1

Test 1 on Lessons 1&2

• Listen and answer the questions.

Noha and Hesham are talking about a competition. Noha's favorite activity is painting. She always feels happy when she paints. Hesham doesn't feel happy when he's painting. He prefers making things with his hands. His favorite activity is making pottery.

Test 2 on Lessons 3&4

• Listen and answer the questions.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954 and moved to London to study art in 1973. He likes to use new interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places. People can see his art all over the world.

Test 3 on Lessons 5&6

• Listen and answer the questions.

Basil was a talented artist who painted Dorian Gray. Dorian wanted to keep his beauty forever. The portrait changed every time Dorian did something bad. Dorian hid the painting in a locked room. Nobody knew Dorian's secret. At the end of the story, Dorian regretted the bad things he had done.

Test 4 on Lessons 7&8

• Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Amira. My class worked on a pottery project this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. When my bowl was finished, I gave it to my mom for her birthday.

Test 5 on Unit 1

• Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Maged. My favorite hobby is designing clothes. My grandma is the person who helped me learn this hobby. She was a famous fashion designer. Sometimes at school, the drama teacher asks me to design costumes for the play. I prefer using recycled cloth instead of buying new cloth to help the environment.

Test 6 on Unit 1

• Listen and answer the questions.

Yesterday was an unusual day at school. It was the school show. Everybody was excited. The show started with the choir. Fourteen students were in the choir. They sang a lot of famous children songs. Then, there was the play. It was amazing. The play was the last part of the school show. All the audience enjoyed it.

Scanned with CamScanner

Unit 2

Test 7 on Lessons 1&2

• Listen and answer the questions.

Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together.

Test 8 on Lessons 3&4

• Listen and answer the questions.

Mazen thinks electricity is the most useful thing in our free time. He loves his laptop! He does his homework on it, then he plays video games with his brother. He loves to watch television with his grandma in the evening, too.

Test 9 on Lessons 5&6

Marco Polo was a famous traveler from Venice, Italy. When he was seventeen years old, he traveled with his father and uncle to China. The journey was very long and difficult. They crossed forests, mountains, and deserts. Marco met many new people and learned new languages. He became a friend of Kublai Khan, the ruler of China. After twenty years, Marco Polo returned home and wrote a book about his travels.

Test 10 on Lessons 7&8

• Listen and answer the questions.

If you want to have a turtle as a pet, you have to know these things. Turtles like to eat flowers and plants. They need a very large space for their home. They need clean soil to dig in. They sometimes need a heat lamp to keep them nice and warm.

Test 11 on Unit 2

• Listen and answer the questions.

It was summer vacation. Sameh was playing with his kitten in the living room. Suddenly, the kitten ran into a small hole in the wall. Sameh put his hand in the hole and tried to get it but instead he pulled out some paper. It was a very old message. Sameh felt very curious.

Test 12 on Unit 2

• Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Ali. We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom. I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends. We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games.

Unit 3

Test 13 on Lessons 1&2

• Listen and answer the questions.

In Northern Siberia, in Russia some students have their lessons in tents in the snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are nomadic. Nomadic people don't live in one place. They travel in sleds across the snow and sleep in tents. They take reindeer to find food.

Test 14 on Lessons 3&4

• Listen and answer the questions.

Hana loves cooking. She started a cooking club. She thinks cooking club is great. Last week, they made special cookies for Eid Al-Fitr. This week, they are going to make lemon juice.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 15 on Lessons 5&6

• Listen and answer the questions.

One night, Nancy heard a loud crash during a storm. The bridge near her village had collapsed. The next morning, a school bus arrived. Nancy was worried because the road to school was long, but it was the only way to go.

Test 16 on Lessons 7&8

• Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Mona. Miss Basma is our English teacher. Yesterday, she told us about a school trip to the Egyptian Museum. I like school trips. I think school trips are exciting because we can learn experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.

Test 17 on Unit 3

• Listen and answer the questions.

My name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm 11, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers !

Test 18 on Unit 3

• Listen and answer the questions.

Nebsin went to school with his father, who was a scribe at the pharaoh's court. At school, a snake bit a boy's hand. Nebsin quickly brought a doctor. The doctor used herbs and oil to help the boy. Nebsin was amazed and decided that he wanted to become a doctor one day.

Unit 4

Test 19 on Lessons 1 & 2

• Listen and answer the questions.

My friend Hani is twelve years old. He has brown curly hair. He has brown eyes. He uses a wheelchair because he can't walk. He is good at English. We play basketball in the school team.

Test 20 on Lessons 3&4

• Listen and answer the questions.

Noha is my best friend. She is eleven. She lives in London with her parents. Noha's favorite hobby is playing volleyball. She writes me a letter every month.

Test 21 on Lessons 5&6

A herd of elephants lived near a lake in India. Hundreds of mice lived in a village nearby. One day, the elephants changed their route and accidentally hurt many mice. The mouse king spoke to the elephant queen, and she agreed to use a different route. Later, the elephants got caught in hunters' nets. The mice came quickly and bit through the nets. They saved the elephants, and everyone learned that even small animals can make a big difference.

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 22 on Lessons 7&8

• Listen and answer the questions.

My name's Amber. I'm eleven, and I live in New York. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family !

Test 23 on Unit 4

• Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Miss Rana. I want you to get into groups to make posters about animals which live in tropical rainforests. It should be an advertisement for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – kindness is important.

Test 24 on Unit 4

• Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Ramez. My favorite hobby is photography. Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it but we could only take one photo ! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun.

Scanned with CamScanner

Answers of Topics

إجابات الفقرات الإنشائية الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Unit 1

Test 1 on Lessons 1 & 2

"A competition"

Next week, we will have a competition in our school. This competition will be about creative activities. There are many different activities like junk modeling, pottery and designing clothes. In this competition, we can use recycled cloth and natural materials to save money and help the planet. Our work will appear in a big art exhibition in the city museum. It will be a great competition and we will enjoy it.

Test 2 on Lessons 3 & 4

"A famous sculptor"

Anish Kapoor is a famous sculptor. Kapoor is a great artist. He was born in India. He studied art in the UK. He likes to use new shapes and materials. He understands math well, and how materials work. He can make sculptures that will stay in a place for a long time. He uses metal because bad weather doesn't damage it.

Test 3 on Lessons 5&6

"A school concert"

Last week, my school had a wonderful concert. Many talented musicians took part in the event. They sang and performed on stage in front of students, teachers, and parents. Some students played the guitar, while others sang beautiful songs for over an hour. Everyone enjoyed the cencert.

Test 4 on Lessons 7&8

"The school show"

The school show was great. I wasn't in a play. I don't like acting. I helped Mr Ali make the props. Props are the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real. If the play is about a family at home in the living room, you need some furniture. We put the photos of the show on the school website. They looked great.

Test 5 on Unit 1

"A pottery project"

Last week, my class worked on a pottery project at school. Our teacher asked us to choose what we like to make. I wanted to make a vase. The teacher showed us how to use the pottery wheel. It was difficult. When we finished work, the teacher put pottery in a kiln to make it hard and strong. We let pottery cool and decorated them with different colors of paint. I was proud of my little vase.

Test 6 on Unit 1

"Creative activities"

There are lots of creative activities we can do. You can try junk modeling to make lots of interesting things. You can use clay to make beautiful pottery. You can make a beautiful collage with material, paint and colored paper. If you have computer skills, you can make animation. All these skills, show how creative you are.

Scanned with CamScanner



Unit 2

Test 7 on Lessons 1 & 2

From	mahdy22@gmail.com
To	essam@yahoo.com
Subject	My bedroom

Dear Essam,

We moved into a new apartment last month. I'm happy because I have a new room. My new room is large, light and comfortable. I share it with my brother, Hassan. We are always good friends. We have a long desk for PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games in our room. We can watch cartoons with our friends, too.

Yours,
Mahdy

Test 8 on Lessons 3 & 4

"Why is electricity important ?"

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop. I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening. These devices all need electricity. Electricity is also important in the kitchen. We can't use our electric kettle without electricity or our blender or our refrigerator.

Test 9 on Lessons 5&6

"Marco Polo"

Marco Polo's father and uncle returned from a long journey in the East and invited him to travel with them. Marco traveled for three years to China. The journey was difficult because they crossed forests, mountains, and deserts. They reached Kublai Khan's court, where Marco became one of the Khan's trusted friends. After twenty years, Marco Polo returned home and wrote a famous book about his travels and discoveries.

Test 10 on Lessons 7&8

"Caring for turtles"

Turtles are lovely pets, and we must take good care of them. These animals like to eat flowers and plants, but you can also buy special turtle food. Turtles need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space with clean soil to dig in. Sometimes, they need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

Test 11 on Unit 2

"Caring for your cat"

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should move your hand over its back, or under its chin. Cats love this! They like a warm, comfortable bed. Don't wake it up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day! They like small meals at different times in the day. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life!

Test 12 on Unit 2

"The chores you and your family do every weekend"

We do a lot of chores in our house. Every weekend, we help each other to keep our house clean and tidy. I mop up the water. My sister picks up the books and washes the dishes. My mom cooks lunch and tidies up the living

Scanned with CamScanner

room. My dad hangs up the clothes. My brother puts out the garbage. After a long day, we rest and have fun together.



Unit 3

Test 13 on Lessons 1 & 2

"Your school"

Hi, my name's Lilly. I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

Test 14 on Lessons 3 & 4

"Green City School"

At Green City School, we care about helping the environment. We use solar panels to make electricity. We recycle a lot of paper and plastic. There is also a demonstration about sorting waste. We have an open day for new students and their families to learn about all our activities.

Test 15 on Lessons 5&6

"The Chalet School"

I wake up early at the chalet school and enjoy the beautiful mountain view. After breakfast, I attend lessons with my classmates. We study English, German, history, and music. Sometimes, we have nature lessons outside near the lake. In the afternoon, I go hiking, swim, or practice songs with the music group. I spend time with friends and learn new skills every day. Life at the chalet school is exciting and enjoyable.

Test 16 on Lessons 7&8

"Your opinion about school trips"

I think school trips are exciting learning experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

Test 17 on Unit 3

From	hatem90@yahoo.com
To	saleem11@yahoo.com
Subject	School clubs

Dear Saleem,

How are things ? Let me tell you about our school sports clubs. Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400 - meter race outside. I love running, but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won! Join our club to learn a new skill and meet new people!

Yours,

Hatem

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 18 on Unit 3

"Your school"

We go to school from Sunday to Friday. I have to wear a school uniform. My school uniform and shoes have to be neat. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers! School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I study science in the laboratory. The playground is very big. We have an hour for lunch. I usually bring lunch from home.



Unit 4

Test 19 on Lessons 1 & 2

"We're all different"

If we were all the same, life would be boring. In my class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has brown eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is straight and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to each other because they're different.

Test 20 on Lessons 3 & 4

"Working together on a poster"

We got into groups to make a poster about rainforest animals. We made a colorful poster with lots of interesting information. While we were working, we showed kindness because it was very important. We also worked together. My friend Fares collected the pictures. Amira wrote the words. We were very happy after finishing the poster.

Test 21 on Lessons 5&6

"A short story about the elephants and the mice"

A herd of elephants lived near a river. Some mice lived under the trees nearby. One day, the elephants couldn't find water. The mice showed them a small river. The elephants were happy and thanked the mice. After that, they became good friends.

Test 22 on Lessons 7&8

"Your friend"

Adam is my best friend. He has a problem with his leg. He uses a wheelchair. He plays wheelchair basketball. He is very clever and talented. Last week, his team was playing the final match. They were about to lose the final. During the last minute, Adam scored three points for his team, so they won the game.

Test 23 on Unit 4

"My personal profile"

Hi everybody!

I'm Malek and I'm eleven. I live in Cairo and I go to El Salam School. I'm in grade 6. My best friends at school are Omar and Ali. We're in the same class. I have short dark hair and I wear glasses. I have a brother, Anas, and a sister, Malak. I'm really into sports. I love watching football games on TV with my dad. On the weekend, I often meet my friends in the park to play basketball. Omar records the most points, so everybody wants him to be in their team. I want to be an engineer. Write and tell me about yourself.

Test 24 on Unit 4

"A short description of a friend"

Tom is my best friend. He is 12 years old. He is from England. He is English.

Scanned with CamScanner

He is tall and wears glasses. He has short brown hair. He has got big green eyes. He can play football, but he can't play tennis. He loves reading and always has a book in his hand. His favorite color is yellow. His favorite food is pizza. He also likes pets. He has got a small puppy. He is friendly and nice. He is always happy.

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم : ١٠٢ - ٨ - ٢ - ٥٤

Scanned with CamScanner

يُصرف مجانًا مع الكتاب
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية
والمراجعة النهائية

أدخل كود الشخص
الموجود على ظهر الغلاف

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

CONNECT Plus

الآن بالمكتبات...
المعاصر فى...
- اللغة الانجليزية
- Connect Plus
- Mathematics
- Science

قاموس المعاصر الناطق
امسح الـ QR CODE
داخل الكتاب

6th Primary
2027
FIRST TERM

6 223007 312189

بالداخل
كراسة المعاصر
للتقييمات والتسميع
والواجب المنزلى

Master Your Skills

GPS
AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
www.gpseducation.com
15014

Scanned with CamScanner